

The birth of mankynde : otherwyse named the womans booke. / Newly set forth, corrected, and augmented. Whose contentes ye may reade in the table of the booke, and most playnely in the prologue. By Thomas Raynalde phisition.

Contributors

Rösslin, Eucharius, -1526.
Raynalde, Thomas, active 1540-1551.
Sinclair, Edward B. Sir, 1824-1882

Publication/Creation

[London] : [Richard Jugge], [1565]

Persistent URL

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/vqw25pqk>

License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
<https://wellcomecollection.org>











EPB 7425/B

[²
4639]

£6,500 — 00 (A)

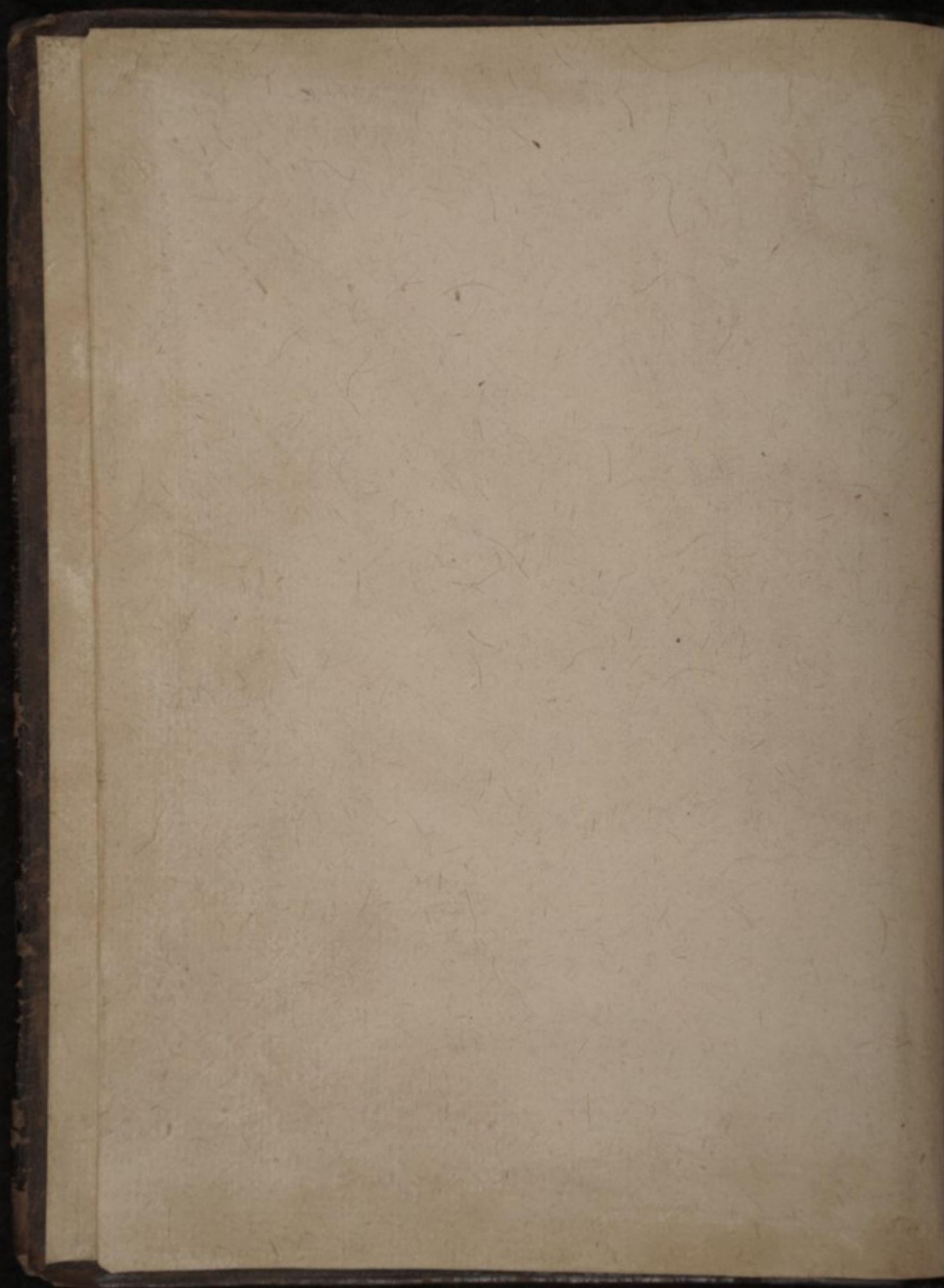
FOLDING PLATE WITH A PICTURE
4 PLATES (2 LEAVES) A BROWN
PICTURE

[14] + 131 [132] LEAVES

FOLDING PLATE WITH NEAT REPAIR
affecting image, repair to corner of
title, touching image and last leaf,
paper flaw to FS verso, affecting 8 lines
of text, R3 marginal tear, N8 closed
tear affecting printed text in margin
on verso, D3 closed tear affecting 1 line
of text, H1-6 paper cut affecting 6 lines of
text, Q7 marginal paper flaw with loss,
not affecting text, I1, 14, & 36
corner torn away, not affecting
text, very small worm hole to inner
margin, occasional early ink
marginalia.

exc
cor
ole

422





Part 1 of the
The birth of
mankynde, other
wyle named the
womans booke.

Newly set forth, corrected, and
augmented. Whose con-
tentes ye may reade in
the Table of the
booke, and
most
playnely in the
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde
Phisition. 1565





L be it some Aristar-
 chus maye perhappes
 fynde some lacke of
 faythfulnesse and dili-
 gence in this worke:
 yet ther is none so fro-
 ward to denie but that
 there is some fruite &
 profyte to bee founde
 therein, seynge that it
 commeth now abzode
 much moze enlarged &
 encreased, and moze di-
 ligently corrected then

it was befoze eyther in the Latine oz in the Englyshe. And
 where befoze in the other printes, there lacked matter neces-
 sarie to the openyng and declaration of the figures pertey-
 nyng to the inner partes: it is nowe so playnely set forth,
 that the simplest mydwylfe which can reade, maye both vn-
 derstande for her better instruction, and also other women
 that haue neede of her helpe, the moze commoditie.

Wherfoze my desyre is, that it may be receyued
 and practised of mydwylfes and all other

matrones, with no lesse successe,

then it is with good wyll

and desyre writt

ten to pro-

fite

and to do good

to other.

The Table of this present Booke.



First, a Prologue
to the women
readers.

In this first Cha-
piter is briefly
declared the con-
tentes of the
firſte Booke.

Capit. i.

In howe manye
coates the body
is lapped or in-

uolued. Cap. ii.

Here is declared what the Muskles be.

Cap. iii.

Fol. i.

Fol. iiii.

Of the kell called Peritonium. Cap. iiii. Fol. b.

The declaration of the names and nature of
the matrix. Cap. v.

Fol. vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi. Fol. vii.

Of the mother port. Cap. vii. Fol. x.

Of the vesseles of seede, called the stones, with
other thereto apperteynyng. Capit. viii.

Folio.

xi.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix. eodem.

Of the office and vse of these seede bryngers.

Cap. x.

Fol. xiiii.

Of the way by the which the seede is sent from
the stones, to the angles or corners of the
matrix. Cap. xi.

Fol. xix.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in
women. Cap. xii.

Fol. xxi.

The Table.

Of the baynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes therof. Item of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. riii.	Fol. xxiiii.
Of the three calles or wrappers, wherein the infant is lapped. Cap. riiii.	Fol. xxix.
Which of the three Matrix baynes containe the Termes, and howe the mylke cometh to the womans brestes. Cap. xv.	Fol. xxxv.
The declaration by letters of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye euery part in woman, mentioned in this booke before.	
Of the first figure	Fol. rlii.
Of the seconde figure.	Fol. rlv.
Of the thirde figure.	Fol. rlvii.
The fourth figure.	Fol. rlviii.
The fyfth figure.	Fol. rlix.
The syrth figure.	eodem.
The. vii. viii. and. ix. figures.	Folio. l.

The Table of the seconde Booke.



Of the tyme of byrth, and whiche is called naturall or vnnaturall. Cap. i.	Folio. li.
Of easy and breasy, difficult, or doloorous deliuerance, & the causes of it, with the signes howe to knowe and foresee the same. Cap. ii.	Fol. liii.
Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue harde	

The Table.

- harde labour. Cap. iiii. Fol. lviij.
Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made tollerable, easye, & without great payne. Cap. iiii. Fol. lxxii.
Howe the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, yf it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. v. Fol. lix.
Howe many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, & how to auoyde, defende, or to remedy the same. Cap. vi. Fol. lxxiii.
Of aborcementes or vntymely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. vii. Fol. lxxvii.
Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix. Fol. xc.
In the last Chapter of this booke he briefely resited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the chief purpose entended in this present booke. Cap. x. Fol. xcvi.

The thirde Booke.



In this first Chapter of this thirde booke is first declared the matters therein conteyned, & then how the infant newly borne must be handled, noyrshed, and looked to. Cap. i. Folio. xcviij.

The Table.

Of the Nurse, and her mylke, and how long the chylde shoulde sucke. Capit. ii.	Fol. C.
Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce to chylzen lately bozne, and the remedies therfore. Cap.iii.	Fol. Ciii.
Of the fluxe oz ouermuch loosenesse of the belly.	Folio. Ciiii.
To vnlose the chylde, beyng bounde.	Fol. Cb.
Remedie for the cough and distillation oz catarrhes of the head.	Fol. Cbi.
Remedie for short wynde.	Fol. Cbii.
Against wheales oz bladders on the tong. eodem.	
Of exulceration oz clefture, chappnyng oz chynnyng of the mouth.	Fol. Cbiii.
Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares.	Folio. eodem.
Of apostumation in the head.	Fol. Cix.
Of the swelling oz bolning of the eyes.	eodem.
Of the scumme oz whyte of the eye.	eodem.
Agaynst immoderate heate of the feuer.	eodem.
Agaynst frettyng oz gnawnyng in the belly.	Folio. Cr.
Agaynst swellnyng of the body.	eodem.
Agaynst often sneesyng.	eodem.
Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.	Fol. Cxi.
Agaynst swellnyng of the coddes.	eodem.
Agaynst swellnyng of the Hauell.	eodem.
Agaynst vnslleepynesse.	Fol. Cxii.
Agaynst peryng oz the hickate.	eodem.
Agaynst often perbrakyng by weaknesse and feblenesse of the stomache.	Fol. Cxiii.
Against fearefull & terrible dreames.	Fol. Cxiiii.
	Agaynst

The Table.

Agaynst issuing forth of the fundament gutte.	
folio.	eodem.
Agaynst Tenasmus.	eodem.
Agaynst wormes in the belly.	eodem.
Of chafyng oz gallyng of any place of the body.	
folio.	Cxvi.
Of the fallyng sicknesse.	eodem.
Consumption oz pynnyng away of the bodye.	
folio.	Cxvii.
Of lassitude, wearynesse, oz heauinesse of the chylde's body.	eodem.
Of tremblyng of the body, oz of certayne mem- bers of the body, called the pally.	fol. Cxviii
Agaynst the strangury oz stone, with stoppyng of the brine.	eodem.
Of gogle eyes, oz lohyng a squynt.	fol. Cxix.

The fourth Booke.



en. Cap. iiii.

If suche thynges the
which shalbe entrea-
ted of in this fourth
boke. Cap. i. fol. Cxx
Of conception, & how
many wayes it may
be hyndred oz letted.
Cap. ii. fol. eodem.
Howe many wayes
conception maye be
letted, and howe the
causes maye be kno-
fol. Cxxi.
Howe

The Table.

- Howe to know whether lacke of conception be
of the woman or of the man, and howe it
may be perceyued whether she be conceaued
or no. Capi. iiii. fol. Cxxiii.
- Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche
may farther the woman to conceiue. Cap. v.
fol. Cxxiiii.
- Of diuers bellyfying receptes. fol. Cxxvi.
- Of the causes and remedies for dandriffe of the
head. fol. Cxxvii.
- To take away heere from places where it is
vnseemely. fol. Cxxviii.
- To do away frekens or other spottes in the
face. fol. Cxxix.
- To destroy wartes and suche lyke excrescensis
on the face, or els where. eodem.
- To cleare and clarifie the skyn in the handes,
face, or other part of the body. fol. eodem.
- To souple and mollifie the ruggednes of the
skynne. fol. Cxxx.
- Agaynst sodayne ryslenges of pimples through
vnkynde heate in the face or els where. eodem.
- To keepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.
- Of stynkyng breath. fol. eodem.
- Of the ranke sauour of the armpoles. eodem.

Here endeth the Table.

¶ A Prologue to the women readers.



Ere in the beginning of this present Prologue, I wil folow the example of them, whiche when they bid any gesses to dyner or supper, are wont first to declare, what shall be they? chere, what fare, and howe many dishes they shall haue, praying them to take it in good worth, and to looke for neither better ne worse, then hath ben mentioned of. And euen so here wyl I do. Before that ye enter into the reading of this litle treatise, I shal succinctly & in fewe wordes recite the same and chiefe contentes of the same, with the vtilitie and profit which may ensue, to the diligent and attentife ouerreader therof, to the ende that ye of these thinges beyng first wel aduertised, may haue the more or lesse courage to employ your labour in ouerlokyng & perusing of the same. For comonly it doth occasionate any man to be the more prompt, ready, and willing to take payne, when he is assured or certified of the profit, purpose, and fruite therof comming, and likewise it is a great prycke or allurement, entising and meuing a man, to reade any booke, when he is somewhat first admonished of the matters comprehended and contayned therein.

The entent
of thautour.

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

The Prologue.

The more
part of this
booke tran-
slated into
Englishe
thre or foure
peres past.

*This author name
was Burgund
The name
of this booke.
who wrote it in Latin
& printed it at
Frankford
an. 1543.
Thos Reynold.*

Thos Reynold.

Shall vnderstande that about a thre or foure
peres passe, a certayne studious and diligene
clarke, at the request and desire of dyuers ho-
nest and sad matrones, beyng of his acquaint-
taunce, did translate out of Latin into English
a great part of this booke, entiteling it accor-
ding to the Latin inscription (*de partu hominis*, that
is to say: of the byrth of mankinde) whiche we
nowe do name (The womans booke) (for so
much as the most part, or well neare all there-
in entreated of, doth concerne and touche onl^ye
women:) In whiche his translation he varied
or declined nothyng at all from the steppes of
his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelitie
in translating, then choise or discretion at that
time in admitting and alowng many thinges
in the same booke, greatly needing admonition
& wary aduise or counsell to the readers, which
otherwise might somtimes ble that for a helpe,
the which should turne to a hinderance. Where-
fore I reuoluing and earnestly reuising from
top to toe the said booke, and herewithal consi-
dering the manyfolde vtilitie and profit, which
thereby mought ensue to all women (as tou-
chyng that purpose) yf it were more narrowly
looked ouer, and with a straighter iudgement
more exactly every thyng therein pondred and
tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde
not be euill employed, ne vnthankefully accep-
ted and receyued of all honest, discrete and sage
women, yf I after good and diligent perusing
therof, did correct and amende suche faultes in
it,

The Prologue.

It, as seemed worthy of the same, and to aduise the readers what thinges were good or intollerable to be bled, whiche were daungerous, and which were vtterly to be exchued. The whiche thing I haue not onlye so done, but ouer this, haue therebnto adioyned and annexed dyuers other moze experimented and moze familier medicines. And farther haue in the fyrrt booke set forth, and euidently declared, all the inward partes of women (suche as were necessary to be knowen to our purpose) and that not onlye in wordes, but also in lyuely and expresse figures, by the which euery part befoze in the booke described, may in maner be as exactly and clearly perceyued, as though ye were present at the cutting open or Anothomie of a dead woman. And thinke not the vtilitie and profite of this first booke, and knowledge thereof to be lytle or of smale value, but take it as the foundation and ground, by the perceyuerance wherof, your wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe euery thing commeth to passe within your bodies in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And farther, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearly perceyue the reason of many diseases whiche happen peculiarly to women, and the causes therof, by whiche perceyuerance, agayne ye shall haue the readyer vnderstanding how to withstand & remedy the sayd infirmities or diseases. For note ye well, that as there is no man whatsoeuer he be, that

Bz

shall

Many thinges annexed and newly added to this booke.

The Contentes of the first booke.

Howe profitable the first booke is

The vtilitie of the perfect knowledge of Anothomie.

The Prologue.

What become an absolute and perfect Physitian,
vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect know-
ledge, of all the in wardes & out wardes of mans
& womans body: euen so shall ye neuer groun-
lye vnderstand the matters contayned in the se-
conde booke, or any other communication, or
writing, touchyng the same intent, except ye
first haue true and iust cognoissance in the first
booke. Againe when that a woman commeth to
a Physitian for counsell, concerning something
that may be amisse in the part, the answer of
the physitian and reasonable allegation of cau-
ses to the same infirmitie is many tymes ob-
scure, darke & straunge, to be comprehended by
the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the si-
tuation, maner, & fashion of the in wardes. And
truely when a person is sicke or diseased in any
part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to
vnderstande in what part the disease is, & howe
that part lieth in the body. This knowledge al-
so ministreth yet a farther ingin and policie to
inuent infinitely the better howe the medicine
shuld be applied, & after the most profitable sort
ministred & set to the diseased plot. To be short,
all the wittines & artificiall craftie inuention,
and diuers maners of ministrations in the no-
ble science of phisicke, procedeth & springeth of
the profounde knowledge of anothomie. Ther-
fore mine advise & better counsel is, that al women
in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce
to come, with all diligence do force them selues
perfectly to the vnderstanding of this first booke:
wel!

The coun-
sable of the
auctour to
the readers.

The Prologue.

well assuryng them that they shall not repent them of theyr small paynes bestowed in that behalfe. And to the end that euery thing might be the playner and moze easy to attayne vnto, I haue at the latter end of the foresayde first booke, set the figures which represent such matters as were entreated of in the booke before, and also haue thereto annexed a sufficient declaration & exposition by letters, of all partes and parcels conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the delyueraunce or birth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perylls, & other cases happenyng to the labouryng woman at that season, with remedies and manyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out any medicine beyng first in the olde booke, but haue in manye places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisicke: and besydes this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectiuall medicines, such as eether I my selfe or other Phisitions beyng yet alvye at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermoze, in this seconde booke ye may fynde dyuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that nedeth) or to restrayne or stoppe the same when they issue moze largely then nature doth require, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thirde booke shall be entreated, of the election and choyse, by certayne signes and to-

The contents of the seconde booke.

Many truely experimented medicines added to this booke.

Things entreated of in the thirde booke

The Prologue.

kens of a good Nurse, whiche maye foster and
bryng by the chylde beyng borne. Item medi-
cines encreasynge, deminyshynge, attenuatynge,
engrossynge, and amendynge the mylke in the
Nurses brestes. Also remedies for many and
sundry diseases, which oft tymes chaunce vnto
infantes after theyr byrth.

What is con-
tryned in the
fourth booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll some-
what commune of conception, with the causes
hynderynge or fartherynge the same, shewynge
certayne counsaile and remedies whereby by
the grace of God the vnfruitfull may be made
more fruitfull, and impedimentes of concepti-
on, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouer-
come, the woman beyng made the more apt to
conceau. And farther, in this last booke shall
be vttered and sette forth certayne embellesh-
yng receptes, concernynge only honest & health-
some decozation and clenynesse, alwayes most
lowable and commendable in a woman, as to
scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to
kepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere
from fallynge away, to take awaye heere from
certayne places, where beyng, it causeth some
deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to
subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or o-
ther where, to remoue and do awaye spottes,
freckens, and other suche lyke displeasaunt
markes and tokens, to souple and mollifie the
skynne beyng rugged and rough, with other
mo suche lyke matters, to long here to be re-
hearsed, the whiche truely are not of any pru-
dent

The Prologue.

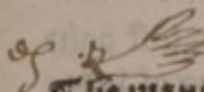
dent person to be reiected, improued, or dispraysed, forasmuche as I teache nothyng in that place, but that only which may make to the honest, comely, and commendable conseruyng and maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and defying all fardyng, painting, and counterfait cast colours, which of some dampnable and misproude people be dayly bled, suche as by all meanes possible seke and searche moze the abhominable and deuillish paynting & garish setting forth of their mortall carkases (the better therby to commend it vnto the eyes of foolyshe & fonde men) then by honest, sober, debonayze, & gentyl maners, so to demeane theyr lyfe, that they may therby rather obtayne the loue, amitie, and hartie perpetuall fauour first of God, & then of all honest, discrete, and godly wylse men. Thus nowe to be short, I haue in as compendious maner as the matter would suffer, set before your eyes the chiefe and principall contentes comprehended in this litle volume. And now remaineth there nothing els but only to require the beneuolent fauour and good acceptation of this my labour and paines spent in the compilyng of these foresayde matters, praying, that as it hath ben to me paynefull in the composyng therof, so it may be both pleasaunt and fruitfull to al women (for whose sake & only respect it is set forth) in the readyng therof. Howbeit, I am not ignorant ne vnure that many there are, before whose syght this booke shall fynde small grace, and lesse fauour.

Against pain
tyng of wo-
mens faces.

The beneuo-
lencie of the
reader requi-
red.

The Prologue.

Harde to
please many
iudgements.


The maner
of Poetes in
tymes past.

The difficultie
to concyle
the good wyl
of peruert
people.

So harde a thyng it is to wypte oz endite any matter whatsoeuer it be, that should be able to sustayne and abide the variable iudgement, and to obtayne oz wyne the constant loue and a lowaunce of euery man, especiallye yf it containe in it any noueltie oz vnwont strangenes. Therefore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed, when that they enterprysed any new oz strange workes, were wont in the frunte of the same, with great protestation, to inuocate and call bypon all the goddes and goddesses by name, requiryng them fauourably to aspire, ayde, and prosper their attempted purpose, to the ende that by theyr obteyned fauour, it myght be the moze acceptable and gracious to all suche as shoulde it beholde and reade. whose example ryght necessary and nedefull it were that I here shoulde deuoutly ensue and folowe, so that I coulde first beleue that by suche maner of inuocation, myght be allured and wonne the beneuolencie and wylling fauour of all suche in whose handes this present booke should happen to fall. But truely I do suppose, that although I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses out of the famous mount of Hellicon, oz praye to be assistent the thre louyng graces, oz great Apollo, god, maister, and chiefe inuentour of the nature of all hearbes and other medicines, oz Esculapius chiefe patrone and president in the worthy science of Physicke, oz wittie Mercurie with his doulce and sugred eloquencie, with sweete Suada, goddesse of al perswasion,

with

The Prologue.

with all other the goddes and goddesses what
euer they be, in whom ingenious Poetes do
faigne to be a maiestie, myght and power, to
encline the hartes of men for to delyte and take
pleasure in any such thyng whiche first shalbe
by theyr godhead allowed & fauoured. Though
(I say) all these shoulde firmly conspire in one
together, and bende them vtterly to the most of
theyr hygh puillaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and
with theyr holy poetical spirite to breathe ouer
this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people
of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and wayward
wyttes, that woulde (without all good reason)
blame and improue the same bryneth yet seene,
and much lesse read. For who be they that geue
so precipitat and heady iudgementes in all ma-
ner of matters, as such (for the more part) the
whiche therein shall haue least cognoissaunce
or knowledge, and take least payne in readyng
or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynst
the whiche they be moste stout, doubtie, and
holde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-
lye of them, that peraduenture shall here and
there in the processe of this booke fynde any
perticuler matters to reprove, and carpe, some-
tymes worthly, and sometymes otherwyle:
but also, yea, and that muche more of them,
whiche generally without all exception, shall
condempne and vtterly reprove all the whole
matter, some alleagyng that it is shame, and
other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng
such

The lyght
iudgementes
of many men

Subst. in imin
& laignat
vntem

Of them that
vtterly do con-
demne this
booke.

The Prologue.

such matters to be entreated of, so playnely in our mother and bulgare language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead, and the derision of theyr wont secretes, by the detection and discoueryng whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the moze to abhorre and lothe the company of women, and farther, in theyr communications to ieste and bourde of womens priuities, not wont to be known of them, with diuers other suche lyke cauillations and reasons: so that theyr opinion it is, that it were moze expedient and better to suppressie and vtterly to condempne vnto darkenesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth into lyght. Loe, such is the lyght iudgement of them, the which in euery thyng, wherof may ensue both good and euyll, haue alwayes theyr eyes wakyng and firmly affixed and directed vppon the euyll, pyckyng and chosyng out the worst of euery matter, omittynge and leauyng to speake of the best, as the thyng whiche were nothyng to theyr purpose. If euery thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed vppon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condempne and banyshe those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessarie, worthy, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it may be peruerted and turned to an euyll vse, by them that be euyll and naught them selues,
and

Answer to
certayne ca-
uillations.

Nothyng so
good but it
may be abu-
sed.

The Prologue.

and do abuse it, ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse therof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynde. fyre and water be two right necessary elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we coulde not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deede hath ben done and perpetrated. By fyre hath ben consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreys. By water, swallowed and drowned infinite men, Shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate and drynke, to the moderate vlers therof, doth minister and maynteyne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnrmeasurable and vnsaciad gourmauntes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes, sickenesse, and at the laste death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr fierce enemies, the true wayfaryng man, from the assaulte of the thiefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterlye destroyed, the true mans throte by the thiefe cutte. The most holpe and sacred Wyble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and briefelye, the hye waye to GOD. The blessed Sacrament of the Altar was institute and ordeyned by our Saviour Iesus Chryste, for a principall, earnest, lyuelye, and mooste presente consolation and comfort

Fyre and water abused.

Meate and drynke abused.

Weapons abused.

The Bible abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

The Prologue.

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holye
Scripture, and also the foresayde holy Sacra-
ment, haue ben, be, and wyll be, the confusion
and condemnation of a great number of the
abusers and indigne or vnworthy receyuers of
them both. Shoulde men, for the auoydyng al
these foresayde inconueniences, and for the rea-
sons abouesayde, condempne and bannyshe fyre
and water, forsake theyr meate and drynke, sup-
presse and forbyd all maner of weapons, abo-
lyshe and set asyde the holy Scripture, deny or
vnregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were
but madnesse once to thinke it. Therfore I say,
the iudgment of that eye can neuer be egall and
indifferent, whiche hath more respecte and re-
garde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes
possible to happen (only through the misuse of
a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profites
dayly and commonlye lyke to ensue to the well
blers of the same. That that of it selfe is good,
is neuer to be disalowed for the sake of them
that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also doeth
testifie: To them that be good them selfe, euery
thyng turneth to good, what euer it be, is to
them a sufficient matter and occasion therein
to seeke the glory of God, and the onely profyte
of theyr euen Christen. And contrary, suche as
be of an yll disposition, in euery thyng (be it
neuer so good and salutarie) picketh out matter
of maynteynaunce to theyr lewdnesse, turning
matters of sadnesse and discretion, to foolyshe
and ppyrthe pratyng contention.

wherfoze

Whose iudg-
mentes can
neuer be in-
different.

To the good
euery thyng
turneth to
good.

The conditi-
on of such as
be yll.

The Prologue.

Wherfoze considering that there is nothing in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holy, or vertuous, but that it may by wyckednes be abused, it shalbe no great wonder though this little booke also, made, wrytten, and set forth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be vbled contrary to godlynes, honestie, or the intent of the wyter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth onely in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some wyckedly disposed person shoulde abuse suche medicines as be here declared for a good purpose, to some diuelishe and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, right soone will perceiue. The seconde poynt is, least that this booke hap- pening into any lyght marchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuylse of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes, to the derision or ashaming of suche women as shuld be in presence, &c. To these reasons can I make no better aunswere, then hath ben alledged before. Notwithstandyng, yet I say that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke shall be so discretely deuyled abroad, that none of them shall fall in any suche persons hand- lyng. Agayne, yf any do chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue, as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall do, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynges, neyther honest, good, ne godly, but speakyng vnrueerently, contemp- tuously

Wherem
this booke
may be ab-
used.

The seconde
poynt.

No light per-
sons shall
haue any of
these booke.

The Prologue.

Of foolithe
and lewde
talkers.

Some wold
that neyther
honest ne
vnhonest
should haue
this booke.

Wf

tuously and vntymely of suche thinges, they do
great iniury, dishonour, and contumely to na-
ture: For he that declareth any thyng in man
oz woman, priuie oz apart, talkyng and rehear-
sing it in reproche, derision, oz confusion of his
euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall
and deadly sinne, for so muche as contumeli-
ously he ashameth and confoundeth his euen
Christen, wherewith he byngeth hym out of
paciencie, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeaunce,
in rehearsyng of suche thynges, and after suche
sort, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere
his mynde, wherfore for suche dedes, he shall
not be accounted of the number of honest and
sage persons, but of the light and lewde. Yet
another sort is there, whiche woulde that ney-
ther honest ne vnhonest men shoulde see this
booke, for because (as they say) be a man neuer
so honest, yet by reading here of thinges to them
before vnknown, they shall conceyue a cer-
tayne lothsomnes and abhorring towarde a
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe
nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secrete, that
they shoulde nede to care who knewe of it, ney-
ther is there any part in woman more to be ab-
horred, then in man. And yf the knowledge of
suche thinges whiche commonly be called the
womans priuities, shoulde diminishe the har-
tie loue and estimation of a woman in the
minde of man, then by this reason, Physitians
and Chyrurgians wyues shoulde greatly be ab-
horred & misbeloued of their husbandes. And I
my

The Prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wyrteth this booke,
shoulde meruaylously aboue many other ab-
horre or lothe women. But to be short, there
is no such thing, neyther any cause thereto why.

Wherfoze all suche tender reasons set apart, let
no woman be greeued who shall see or beholde
this booke, for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy
and knauishe that shall reade it, here I am sure
he shall learne neyther lewdenes, vnhappines,
ne knauery. Howbeit, generally to all men, in
whose handes this booke shal chaunce to come,
I counsayle and exhort, that they take not by-
pon them to talke of any thynges therein con-
tayned, but onlye where it may edifie, and be
assuredly well accepted.

No matter
who reade
this booke.

The exhorta-
tion to all
readers.

For women lightly wyll not gladly heare of
suche matters, by any man, vnlesse it be a Phi-
sition of whom they require counsayle, or of
theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no dis-
pleasure to any honest and louyng woman,
that her husbände shoulde reade suche thynges,
for many men there be of so gentle and louyng
nature towarde theyr wiues, that they wyll be
more diligent and carefull to reade or seeke
out any thyng that shoulde do theyr wyues
good, beyng in that case, then the women them
selues. Brievely, I require all readers hereof, to
interpretate and consture euery thyng herein
contayned, accordyng to the best, and to vse
euery thyng herein entreated of, to the pur-
pose wherfoze it was wyrtten, for truely as
for

The Prologue.

The consideratiō why this booke was set forth

This booke set forth in many other languages.

for my part considering the manyfolde, dayly, and imminent daungers & perylls the whiche all maner of women of what estate or degree so euer they be, in theyr labours do sustayne and abyde, yea, many times with peryll of their life (of the which there be to many examples nedelesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde be a very charitable and laudable dede, and right thankefully to be accepted of all honorable and other honest matrones, yf by my paynes this little treatise were made to speake Englyshe, as it hath ben long syth taught to speake Dutche, frenche, Spanishe, and dyuers other languages. In the whiche countreys there be fewe women that can reade, but they wyll haue one of these bookes alwayes in readines, where also this and other such bookes be as commonly solde at euery Stacionars shop, as any other booke. The same commoditie then and profite whiche they in their regions do obtayne by enioying of this little booke in theyr maternall language, may also ensue vnto all women in this noble Realme of Englande, it beyng lykewyse sette forth in our Englyshe speache, so that to them whiche diligently will aduert, and geue heede to the instructions of this little booke, it may supplie the roume and place of a good midwyfe, and aduyse them manye tymes of sundry cases, chaunces, and remedies, wherein peradventure ryght wyse women and good midwyues shalbe ful ignoraunt.

And

The Prologue.

And truely (as I haue ben credibly enfourmed
by dyuers persons worthy to be beleued) there
be sith the fyrst setting forth of this booke, right
many honorable Ladyes, and other worshipful
Gentyl women, whiche haue not disdayned, the
oftener by the occasion of this booke, to fre-
quent and haunt women in theyr laboures, ca-
rying with them this booke in theyr handes,
and causyng such part of it as doth chiefly con-
cerne the same purpose, to be read befoze the
Mydwyfe, and the rest of the women then be-
yng present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue
ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith
the labouryng woman hath ben greatly com-
forted, and alleuiated of her thronges and tra-
uayle: whose laudable example and doynge,
woulde God that many proude Mydwyues
woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche,
as there be many ryght expert, diligent, wyle,
circumspect, and tender about suche busines as
appertayneth to theyr office: So be there a-
gayne many mo full vndiscrete, vnreasonable,
chorlish, and farre to seeke in such thinges, the
whiche shoulde chiefly helpe and succour the
women in theyr mozte paynefull labour and
thronges, through whole rudenesse and rash-
nesse onlye, I doubt not but that a great num-
ber of women in theyr labour spede worse then
neded otherwyle. But here nowe let not the
good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is
spoken of the badde. For verily there is no sci-
ence, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beres,

Howe La-
dies & gen-
tilwomen
haue vsed
this booke.

Of Mid-
wyues.

Some saye
that the
mydwyfe
is a creature
of all sortes.

The Prologue.

Some Mid-
wines wold
haue had
this booke
forbidden.

The false
surmises of
the maleuo-
lent.

The good
Midwines
were glad of
this booke.

and Asses, whiche as aboue all other haue most
nede of information and teaching, so most com-
monly agayne, more then any other, wyl they
kicke and wyntce agaynst suche as woulde them
refourme or reduce to any better way then they
haue ben accustomed to in times past. And this
do I say, for because that at the first commynge
abrode of this present booke, many of this sort
of Midwines, moued eyther of enuie, or els of
mallice, or both, diligented and endeouored
them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to
fynde the meanes to suppressse and abrogate the
same, makynge all women of theyr acquaint-
taunce (whom they thought to haue any know-
ledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng
worth, and that it shoulde be a slaunder to wo-
men, for so muche as therein was descried and
set forth the secretes and priuities of women,
and that euery boy and knaue hadde of these
bookes, readyng them as openly as the tales of
Robin hood. &c. The whiche sayinges, as they
were false and vntrue, and malicious allegati-
ons onely of euyll harted persons, to whom it
was great grieffe, that any by readyng thereof,
shoulde see or vnderstande more then they had
knowledge of before: So is it very sooth and
true, that ryght dyuers of the better and more
sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and
berye desirous to haue of them, and gaue
faythfull counsell also vnto women of theyr
familier knowledge, to heare the booke read by
some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it
them

The Prologue.

them selues, whose honest and vertuous indu-
stry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and de-
serue the laude and prayse of all them that be
laudable them selve: euen so is the fylthy and
byle ingratitude and despituos enuye of the
maleuolent, to be detested and vtterly abhorred
of all people: whose malignaunt wittes, yf
they might preuayle of theyz purpose, woulde
sley the good courages of all honest enterpri-
sers, in those matters and all other. And

thus I conclude and make an ende

of this rude Prologue, requi-

ring the gentle readers

thereof, that if they

shall fynde any

thing ther-

in inter-

pretable to diuers senses, to ac-

cept only that whiche may

make to the best, accor-

dyng to my mea-

nyng.

C 2

Enuy and
vnthankful-
nes to be ab-
horred.

The first booke.

In this first Chapter is briefly declared the Contentes of the first booke.



Although that many thinges entreated of in this first booke, shall seeme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandyng of the seconde booke, yet then contrary do I ensure and certifie (as I haue sufficiently said in the Prologue) that the ignorant in the first, shall be full blynde in the seconde, to the whiche, the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The vtilitie
of the first
booke.

The Contentes
of
this booke.

*The vtilitie
of the first
booke.*

In this first booke then shall be declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inwarde partes of a woman, such as are in them, by nature dedicate and assigned to the propagation, conception, and bearing of mankynde. In who truely is the receptacle, & as ye woulde say, the campe or field of mankynde to be engendred therein. And although that
that

that man be as principall mouer and cause of the generation: yet (no displea-
 sure to men) the Woman doth conferre
 and contribute muche more, What to
 the encrease of the chylde in her
 wombe, and What to the noyrshement
 thereof after the byrth, then doth the
 man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde
 demaunde to whom the chylde oweth
 most his generation: Ye may worthyly
 make aunswere, that to the mother,
 whether ye regarde the paynes in bea-
 ryng, other els the conferrence of mooste
 matter in begettyng.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall
 reade certaine thinges, which in times
 passed haue ben corruptly, negligently,
 yea and very falsely wrytten of, and of
 the whiche both men, yea and women
 them selues, haue conceiued very erro-
 nous and misopinions, as ye shall far-
 ther perceyue in the processe.

Nowe therefore that we come to the
 declaration of the Organs generatiue
 in woman, it shalbe necessary to the bet-

The woman
 conferreth
 more the ge-
 neratio then
 man.

Many things
 falsly wrytten
 in times past

better vnderstandyng thereof, fyrst to
shewe the discription of certayne thyn-
ges, without whose knowledge, this
treatyse woulde be manye tymes the
more obscure and darke.

In howe many coates the body is lapped or
inuolued. Cap. ii.

The princ-
pall coates of
the body.



The body of man or
womā is inuolued
or compassed vni-
uersally with three
principall coates.

Of the whiche, the
first and vttermost
is called the skyn,
in Latin *Cutis*, with

whom generally every part of the body
is clad & inclosed, the which yet in some
part is more soft, delicate, & thin, then in
some other, & in some one person more
stowre & stiffe, then in some other again,
for causes needlesse here to be rehearsed.

And ye shall note, that vpon the out-
ward face and superficie of this skinne,
there is yet another thinner skinne, in
Latine

The superfi-
ciall skynne.

Latine commonly named *Cuticula*, and of some *Efflorescentia cutis*. This thinne skin is it, the which ye see ryse like a bladder when any part of the body is blistered with fyre or hot water, so that betwene this thinne skin and the very skinne, is contained the water which resorteth to the place by the violence of the fyre or heat, the which thin skin also we vse to pricke to let the water issue forth, also the same that skalet h or pylleth of the handes or other parts of the body being scabbed & begynnyng to drye. Item the skin that the Adders do cast in the sommer tyme, is the foresaid thin superficiall skin, & not the very substanciall skin of the body in dede. For the very skinne neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great violēce, as by flaying, lyke as beastes be flayne at the butchers, & as they flay conies. And againe, the thin or superficiall skin, skale it or fal it of neuer so oftē, yet in the place of it is reingendred new, as good alwayes as the former. But yf the second & very skinne be perished, by

Cuticula.

*The adde or
skin be rasyd
is Cuticula
not the very skin*

The herpe
skyn skalet
not of.

The first Booke.

The verye
skin perished,
neuer restored

cuttyng or apostumation, or by other
casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his
olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe
allwayes in the place where it is, as it
were a seame, skarre, or marke, smothe
and harder then the other skynne, and
without naturall powers.

The seconde
coate.

membrana car-
sa. The fleshy
skynne.

composita

The seconde inuestiture or clothynge
of the body, is named the fleshye skin, in
Latin *Membrana carnosā*, so called, for be-
cause that it conteineth and is compas-
sed of fleshyenes, then any other kell or
skin in all the bodie, & is, as it were, the
lynyng to the foresayde *Cutis*, that is the
very skyn immediatly aboue hym, the
very skin and it being both basted toge-
ther, by a great numbze of small fibres
or cordes enterlasyng these two skinnes
so that with great payne vnneth may
they be seperated the one frō the other.
And farther, betwene these two skins
runne a great number of vaynes, ar-
tires and skinnes, in euery part of the
body, so that the great vaynes which
appeare so manifestly to your syght in
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betwene the proper skinne and the fleshy skynne, this beyng to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thirde coate of the body, is the fatte, in Latine *Adeps*, the which doeth so generally in euery part of the bodye inuolue and wrappe the same, as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman beyng in any reasonable lyking, it is founde in euery part (except felwe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places nedelesse here to be resited, and doth entercurre and run betwene the two foresayde skynnes, receiuyng & embzasyng in it selfe the small bastying fibres, the vaynes, artires, and sinues, which (as I saide before) be deriued from the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betwene the two skinnes, the lesse be the vaynes intercurrng betwene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance
of

The thirde
coate, is the
fatte.

Stoꝛe of fat
letteth the
shewe of the
vaynes.

The first Booke.

Fat in some
part, more
then some.

of fat drownynge & coueryng the greatnes of them) the which also in the selfe same place of a leaner or sparer person, shalbe sene very great, and as it were swollen baynes, in comparison of the fatter. Itē, vnderstande ye that in some part of the body, naturally fatnes doth abound much more then in other some, as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two fingers thicke & more, and in women that be meanelly fat, in the thyes & buttockes this fatte is of thre, yea foure fyngers thickenes, which (as I sayde aboue) alwayes hath his place betwene the foresayde two skynnes.

What is con-
teyned nexte
vnder the
fleshy skynne

Nowe immediatly vnder the fleshye skin, be conteyned the Muskles of the body, so that the inner face or superficie of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth the Muskles, is alwayes bedewed with a certayne slympe moysture, by whiche meanes, the foresaid Muskles mouyng and styrrynge vnder the said fleshy skin, be the freer, & haue the lesse impediment or let in theyr motion, & very easy it is
to

to seperate this skin from the Muskles.

Here is declared what the Muskles be.

Cap. iiii.

The Muskles of mans body
 be called the mouyng cor-
 des and fleshye strynges,
 Whereby any member of
 the body is moued to or fro
 vpwarde or downewarde, or turned
 rounde. As for example. If ye close, or
 otherwyle do moue either of your han-
 des, and in closyng or mouyng it, With
 the other hande do feele the Wreste of
 that hande, ye shall sensiblie perceyue
 as it were certayne cordes mouyng vn-
 der the skynne, the whiche be called
 Muskles, in Latin *Musculi*. To discusse
 curiously the nature or occasion of the
 name of Muskles, is not for this place.
 Here it is sufficient to vnderstand what
 is meant by the name. Yet note ye
 well, that wheresouer there is greate
 store of Muskles, and chiefely in the
 myddle parte of them, there is al-
 so greate plentie of flesshe, enterlar-
 dyng

What is
 meant by the
 name of Mus-
 kles.

h. l. l. m. y. s.

The first Booke.

The muskles
entermingled
with fleshe.

lardyng & entermynglyng it selfe With
the Muskles, & as it were conbyndyng,
colligatyng, or knyttyng together the
Muskles, not so yet, but that neuerthe-
lesse they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the body lefte a-
part and vnmentioned of, here Wyl I
onlye declare a litle of the Muskles of
the belly, forsomuch as their operation
is sometymes conferent and appertey-
nyng to the matters that we entend of.

The muskles
of the belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the bellye,
next vnder the fleshy kell or skyn, be. iiii.
Muskles, eche situate and sette vnder o-
ther, of the whiche, the vppermost im-
mediatly touchyng the fleshye skyn be
called the Byawyse descendyng Mus-
kles, in Latin *Musculi obliqui descendentes*. Of
these Muskles there be two, in ech syde
of the belly one, so that these two Bia-
wyse descendyng Muskles meete toge-
ther in the myddle region of the bellye,
and be extended or spread ouer all the
amplitude of the belly, shapyng thereto
as it were another coate.

*Musculi obliqui
descendentes
part 2*

The

The seconde Muskles be named the byawyle ascending Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi obliqui ascendentes*, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the first, in eche syde or coaste of the belly is there one.

The thirde sort of the belly Muskles as they be sitnate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi recti*, which be double as the other two before.

The fourth be nominated the ouerthwart Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi transuersi*, because they transuerse or ouerthwart the belly. In eche side likewise of whom, there is one of these Muskles, which in the middle line of the belly encountre eche other, as I haue sayde of the abouenamed three Muskles, so that the byawyle descendyng, and the byawyle ascending with the ouerthwart Muskles, do eche of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the belly, but so do not the right Muskles,

Musculi obliqui ascendentes

The right Muskles.

Musculi recti

The ouerthwart Muskles.

Musculi transuersi

The first booke.

The vse of
the foure
belly Mus-
cles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but
small in comparison of the other. All
these foure Muskles be to the entrayles
and bowels within the belly, as foure
seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe
of Whom, together with the ayde of
the midriffe, all expulsion both byward
and downewarde in the guttes, in the
stomacke, in the matrix of the Woman
in the tyme of labour, and also in the
bladder in tyme of makyng of Water,
is wrought, and yet belydes this vtili-
tie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) de-
fende, fortifie, and strength the inwar-
des of the belly.

¶ Of the Kell, called *Peritoneum*.

Capit. iiii.



Vnder the laste Muskle of the
belly, called the ouerthwarte
Muskle, immediaklye succe-
deth a certaine thin rime, kell,
or skin, named in Latin, *Peritoneum*, whi-
che compasseth rounde the amplitude
and

The Perito-
neum and
his office.

and largeour of the belly, takyng his originall at the bynders of the loyne bones, and from thence dilatyng and spreading it selfe abroade, vnderlineth the ouerthwart Muskels, the midriffe, & part of the short ribbes. To be short, this rime vnderlineth all the whole cavitie, holones, or amplitude of the bellye, from the midriffe to the flankes or share, immediatly contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe, all the whole contentes of the belly, euen as the skin next vnder the shell of an egge enuironeth and compasseth immediatly all the contayned meate of the egge. And as for *Peritoneum*, doth not onlye inuolue all the entrayles of the belly in his compasse, but also yeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate and webbe of the cloth of his owne bodye, by the which his liuery, they be the more arctly & straightly affixed or fastened vnto himselfe, and farther, in them selues the stronger, within the cavitie of the belly, and vnder this *Peritoneum*, be contayned these bowels folowynge.

The vse and profit of the *Peritoneum*

First

Bowels co:
tained vnder
der the Peritoncum.

Stomachus
ommentum.

hepar.

splen.

vesica.

matris.

intestina

renes.

utera caba.

Arteria magna.

First the stomake, Whiche is the first receptacle and receauer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the Winde pipe, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin, Omentum, the liuer, the splene or melt, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes, the kydnees, the master bayne, and the master artire. But here We shall begin first to entreate of the matrix, as the part which maketh chiefly to our purpose.

The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix.

Capit. v.

Dyuers
names of
the Matrix.

o matris

matris

wombs in Gr

libro first

Synonima.

BEre ye shall vnderstande, that these thre wordes, the Matrix, the Mother, and the Wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say: The place wherein the seede of man is conceived, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the tyme of

of deliuerance, in Latin, named *Vterus*
 & *Matrix*. The necke of this Wombe, o-
 therwise called the womans priuie,
 We wyl call the Wombe passage, or the
 priuie passage, in Latin *Ceruex vteri*, & *pu-*
endum muliebre, the extreme end, or the first
 entraunce of this priuie or Wombe pas-
 sage, ye shall name the passage port, for
 because that it is the port gate, or en-
 traunce of that passage, or way into the
 Wombe or matrix, in Latin, *Vulua. i. vulua.*

The Wombe passage then or the necke
 of the Wombe, taketh his beginning at
 the passage port, and from thence sty-
 eth and mounteth ryght bywarde un-
 der the sharebone like a great conduct,
 varyng in length & bredth accordyng
 to the age of the woman.

To make especiall mention of the
 length of this Wombe passage, were but
 follie, for the diuersitie thereof. Not-
 withstandyng in women it is esteemed
 of the length of .x. .xi. .xii. or .xiii. fingers
 bredth, some more, some lesse. And this
 we may say that nature hath so prouid-

*uterus of
matrix part
idem ut vtrum*

*ceruix vteri et
pudendum muli-
eris part i dicitur*

*et passage part
id est vulua*

The necke
of the Pa-
trix.

*ceruix vteri
ant matrix*

longitudo

*longitudo ceruicis
vteri*

The first booke.

ded that it is of sufficient length, to receyue the priuie part of man, in the generation, directing the same towardes the wombe port, thoro we the whiche the seede is naturally sent from the man into the wombe or Mother, therto helping an attractife power, whiche is inset and geuen to the wombe, to attract and drawe towardes it selfe the seede parted from the man (so that there be no other let.)

¶ Of the wombe and his partes.

Capit. vi.



The head or vpper end of this wombe passage, is situate the wombe it selfe, whiche in women beyng not with childe is very little, contract and drawen together, so that the amplitude or largenes therof, passeth not the amplitude & largenes of the priuie passage, the whiche thing to some may seeme vncredible, yet by Anothomie ye maye see it to be true.

The wombe
or Matric in
women not
with chylde
contractid.

And

And for al this contraction or drawing so nere together of the Matrix, the out-
 syde of it is very smothe, moyst, glister-
 yng, and reddishe, as it were a lyttle
 redde tempered With a great deale of
 Whyte, the insyde also of the Matrix is
 smothe: yea, and though that the Ma-
 trix (as we haue said) be full of riuels or
 Wrinkles, by the reason that it is so con-
 tract, from a great amplitude or large-
 nes (as may be seene in the Wombe or
 Matrix of Women With chylde) to this
 little compasse, yet may a body scarce
 perceyue in this inner side any Wrinkle,
 (albeit that there be infinite) they be so
 finely and nere drawen together.

This contraction of the Matrix, no
 doubt was made by nature, for these
 causes, partly that at suche tyme that
 the woman is not with childe, it should
 occupie the lesse rowme in the belly, but
 chiefly that in tyme of conception of
 the seede, the little bolke or quantitie
 of the sayde seede, at his first concey-
 uing into the womans Mother, may

The cause of
 the contrac-
 tion of the
 Matrix.

be touched rounde about euery Where of the Mother, and as ye woulde say, amplexed or embrased, and contayned (as the nut shell contayneth immediatlye the nut) of the inner Walles or face of the matrix, and as the seede is viuified, shayed, and doth encrease, so doth the amplitude of the matrix enlarge and Ware bygger, so that at the laste, When the infant commeth to his full groweth, or When the woman is great With chylde, then this coate or kell of the Matrix is as thinne as a bladder, Where that in tyme of his contraction, or When the woman is not With childe, the coate or Wall of the Matrix is as good as halfe an inche thicke.

Howe the Matrix varieth the thicknes and thinnes of his coate.

The founde of the Matrix.

Howe ye shall vnderstande, that the founde or bottome of the matrix is not perfectly rounde bowllwyse, but rather lyke the forme of a mans hart, as it is paynted, sauyng that the partition or clifte in the matrix betwene both corners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so profoundlye dented inwardes as the clift

elyfte in the hart: For in the inwarde vault, cavitie, or holonesse of the Matrix, there is a certayne seame, Whiche begynnyng in the myddle of the forepart of the Matrix at the Wombe port, doth passe forth by that foresyde, & so by the bottome to the hynder syde of the Matrix, & from thence along downe to the Wombe port on the backsyde, as ye may more euidentlye see in the figure hereof. This seame then is as it were a litle seperation, marke, or limitie, deuidyng the Wombe in two equall partes or sydes, the ryght and the lefte. Notwithstandyng, in the Matrix there is but one vault, cavitie, holonesse, or amplitude, the foresayde seame beyng but as it were a note, signe, or scace sensible marke running along the sides and botome of the Wombe. But this seame or line where it passeth the bottome of the mother or Wombe, is more crasse, thicke, and fleshye, propendyng, hedyng, hangyng or lokyng downeward into the vaulte or amplitude of the

D 3

Wombe,

A certayne seame deuidyng the Matrix as it were in two parts.

In the Matrix but one holonesse.

Certayne erroneous opinions of. vii. selles in the wombe.

Wombe, the whiche line in the sides is nothyng so manifeste ne sensible to be perceyued. Thus ye may see, that the myddle part of the bottome of the Matrix, is not so hye as the two corners or angles on both sydes be. Other distinctions or seperations in the Matrix is there none, albeit that in tymes passed, diuers Clerkes haue written, and many other haue beleued, that there shoulde be seuen selles, or seuen distinct places in the Matrix, in thre of the which, on the ryght syde, shoulde onlye men chyldren be conceyued, and in the other thre on the left syde women chyldren, and yf it chaunced that the seede were conceiued in the seuenth sell, which was the middelmoeste, then that shoulde become a monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman. The which al is but lyes, dreames, and fonde fantasies. For the womans Matrix, as I haue sayde, is euen as a strong bladder, hauing in it but one vniuersal holonesse, and the chyld when it lyeth in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more then

then on the other, the head beyng to-
wardes one of the corners or angles, &
not vpright toward the middle brydge.

The Matrix
hath but one
holonesse.

¶ Of the Mother port.

Cap. vi.



The entrance of
the Matrix or
Wombe, is na-
med the Wombe
port, or mother
port, the which
in substaunce,
& fassion, much
doeth resemble
the fourme of

Of the Mo-
ther port, and
the situation
therof.

an haukes bell, or other litle mozes bel-
les, sauyng that it is much bygger, ha-
uyng a clift ouerthwart the body ther-
of, as ye may more playnly perceyue by
the figure hereof. And this port of the
Matrix is of substaunce more thicke &
crasse then the rest of the same, & as it
were a kernell rounde & clift in the mid-
dest. This wombe port also is fastned &
affixed to the vpper ende of the wombe
passage, as all the rest of the wombe is.

Howe be it, the myddle parte of the Wombe port or the snout therof, where it bosseth downewarde, doth touche no side nor part of the Wombe passage, but onely heldeth pendande wyse, or loketh downewarde, and where as at suche tyme that the man companieth with the woman, the priuie passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priuie part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clift of the Wombe port is not moued thereby ne dilated, excepte that it be at such tyme that the matrix beyng apte and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this Wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the Wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The wombe
well disposed
naturally at-
tracteth the
seede.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceiued in at this Wombe port it doth not alwayes remayne there, but many tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it self. Albeit yf the seede be
retay?

retayned styll in the Matrix, then doth the Wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat Without violence, and so doth remayne vntyll the time of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it delateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes of the Matrix after the seed conceived.

¶ Of the vessels of seede, called the Stones, with other thereto appertayning.
Cap. viii.



Feche syde of the Matrix lieth a stone, which both be called the womans stones, wherein is engendred the seede and sparrie that cometh from the woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seede of man, but rather weake, fluy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmitie: howbeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the whiche it was ordeyned, as the seede of man for his

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, much fassioned after the shape of a great and brode almonde. The substance and body of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kirkelles sette together, betwene the which is much holonesse, and therein conteyned a certayne thinne watery substance. This substance of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thinne skinne, very firmly annexed to the foresayde substance, which also doth receyue into hym selfe the seede byngers. Ye may name the same coate in Latin *Supergeminalis*.

¶ Of the seede byngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede byngers.



The seede byngers, called in Latin *Vasa semen adferentia*, be two baynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one bayne and one artire, and take theyr begynnynng

nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the great maister bayne, in Latin *Cava vena*, and the great Artire, *Arteria magna*. The maister bayne hath his originall of the liver, from whence it descendeth downe wards along the loynes, vntyll it stayne vnto the begynnyng of *Os sacrum*, where the Artire (as the worthyer) begynneth to mount vppon the maister bayne, and in this place they both deuide them selues in two partes forke wyse, the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the ryght thygh & legge, the left, into the left legge, the bayne euermore associate with the artire, the which hath his beginning of the hart, from whence he is descended thoroowe the mydryffe to this place, distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The office of the great bayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer (which is the bloud shoppe, where the bloud is engendred

The originall
of the great
bayne.

The office of
the baynes.

The first Booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye
bloud, therewith to nozyshe them. For
to the great vayne Where they passe,
there commeth innumerable smal vai-
nes on euery syde, euen as to the great
ryuers many small streames on euery
syde do resort.

The office of
the Artires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade
abrode in the body the vitall and lyue-
lye spirite, engendred in the bosome of
the harte, and to refreshe and temper
the immoderate heate whiche other-
wyle mought be engendred in the bo-
dye, the whiche also sleepe we or wake
we, do continuallye moue and beate,
therefore the motion of them is called
the pulce, and loke after what maner
the hart (whiche is the well of these ar-
tires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and
euen so do they.

The hart e
Artires haue
two contrary
motions.

The hart then, and the artires tho-
row him, haue two contrary mocions:
one is, in closyng it selfe, and the other,
in dilatyng and openyng of it selfe,
whiche sorte of mouynges we call the
beatyng

beating of the pulces, When the artires do open them selues, then they attract, drawe, or sucke in fresh ayre, to temper the heate of the body Withall, and also spirituall and thin pure bloud. But When they close them selfe, then do they expel mistie fumes, and hoate breathes, or vnnaturall vapoures, suche as of necessitie alwayes be engendred in al partes of the body, by the Whiche bloud doth passe, for causes to long here to be alledged, neyther is there any notable vayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the right side and forepart of the great vaine proceadeth a braūch, deriued from that place a longe the loynes downwardes to the head of the ryght stone, from the ryght syde lyke wyle and foreface of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great vayne downe towardes the right loynes, wher it meeting With the foresayde vayne braunche, before they emplant them selfe in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here
straight

The meting
of the vayne
and artire,

The first booke.

straight enlarging them selfe, little and little stepelwyle, not fully rounde, but flattishe before and behynde, With the broder ende plantyng & infixing them selfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende, Where this vayne braunche and artyre braunche do first meete, they beginne to entermingle, embrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wyle, Wrything and deuydyng them selues in thousande of lyttle braunches, as it were hayres of the head, the one embracing, compassyng, and ouerthwarting the other so confusedly, that no wit can expresse the ryght maner and order of theyr commixtion. Call this part then in Enlyshe, the bradid body, in Latin *Varicoso formemplexum*, whose nether and broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the ryght stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfolde wyle disperled, spred, and commixt.

The bradid
body.

And

And also into the skin or couer of the stone, called before *Supergeminalis*, from the sayd bradyd body, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the little small vaynes Whiche ye see reddishe in a mans eye.

And looke What description and pro-
cesse, We haue made of the ryght side
seede byngers, to the ryght stone, euen
the same vnderstand of the left side seede
byngers to the left stone, sauyng that
the vayne braunche Whiche commeth
to the left stone, most commonly taketh
his originall of the nether syde of the
left kydney vayne, and not immediatly
of the great vayne as the other.

And ye shall vnderstande againe, that
from the foresaid vayne & artyre of eche
side, at the place Where theyz fyrst con-
junction or meeting is, proceadeth a cer-
tayne braunche of the vayne, assosiate
With the artyre, Which both passe forth
together to the found or bottome of the
Mother or Matrix, of that syde Where
they stande, there delatynge and sprea-
dyng

Vaynes de-
riued to the
bottome of
the Matrix.

The first booke.

dyng them selfe abroade in manyfolde
smaller bzaunches, to the nourishment
of the body of the matrix.

¶ Of the office and vse of these seede
bryngers. Capit. x.

The seede
procreate of
the bayne
bloud and
the artiriall
bloud.

Through these seede bryngers,
bloud out of the baynes, and
liuely spirit out of the artires
be deriued, yea, or rather (to
speake more properly) attract or dra-
wen into the stones, there by vertue and
naturall instinction of the place altered
and chaunged, beyng fyrst confused to-
gether the bloud and the spirite, by mu-
tuall amplexations or embracements
of these two vesselles, the bayne and
the artyre beyng conioyned and vnite
in one very body, fyrst beginning in the
bradid body, & then after in the whole
bodye of the stone: So that thoroowe
the manyfolde and infinite circulati-
ons of the attracted matter by the con-
duictes or baynes infinitely intricate
and

and Wrythed with a thousande reuolutions or turagaynes (and all in the little compasse of the body of the stones) the bloud and spirite commixed together, getteth another nature and propertie both in colour and in effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that Note the ingin and pollicie of nature moſte commonly alwayes when that nature is diſpoſed to make a tranſmutation of any matter, that can ſhe not do, vnleſſe ſhe haue a mine, ſhoppe, or workehouſe, wherein by continuall circulation of the matter tranſmutable, ſhe may bring her purpoſe to paſſe. Euen as mettalles and other minerals of the earth, haue their ſecrete and vnuiſible baynes, in whiche by dayly and long coagitation, mouing, circulation, and hurling together, thei be brought from one forme to another, & made metals of that the which befoze was none.

Of theſe ſort of mines, there be foure Foure mines in mans body. principall in the body of man. The firſt is the mine of bloud, which is the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,

The first booke.

before of colour Whyte, is transmited into red, made apt and fitte to nourishe all partes of the body, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thoro we very small and infinite lyttle baynes into the lyuer.

The hart is
the seconde
mine.

The seconde mine is the hart, which of the bloud attract and drawen from the great master bayne, procedyng out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlors, doth engender vehement and liuely spirite, comixed with depured and greatly elaborated bloud, within the selles of the hart, from thence sent forth thoro the artires, into all partes of the bodye, beyng in colour yealowishe, thinne and hotte bloud.

The Brayne
the thirde
mine.

The thyrde mine is the Brayne, of whom all the sinewes take theyr original. In whom the Wittie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of al sensibilitie be engendred, and thoro the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all suche partes as moue and feele, haue that by reason of sinewes deriued

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones, in whō by conuixtion of al the other thre foresaid metalles of the body, that is to say, bayne blood, arteriall blood, and liuely spirites engendred in the head, is engendred & produced seede, whiche bestowed in his due place, becommeth like a perfection to the creature from whence it came, that is to say, of mankinde, man.

But ye shall vnderstande, that the receyuyng of the seede into the stones, is not that there shoulde be any one onely caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, or parler in the bodye of the stone, wherein it myght be receyued and retayned, lyke as the holownesse of an egge, the meate beyng out of it, or of an haseell nutte, the kernell out of it, but farre otherwyle: for the stones (chiefly in man more then in woman) be massife, not hard, but delicate and softe, as a softe kinnell, full of small & almost vn sensible white vaines, resoluing them selfe in and out a thousand folde, and manyfolde wise intricat

The fourth mine is the stones.

Howe the seede is receyued into the stones.

together, within the which the seede is
 conueyed, carped, concocted, or digested
 and altered, by vertue of the Whyte flesh,
 which intercurrenth and interminglith
 it self euery where betwene the foresaid
 bayne, lyke as the earth doth inter-
 curre and intermingle it selfe betwene
 and among the small fibres, bearded, or
 heares of rootes. The Whyte coate al-
 so or Walles of the said baynes, helping
 not a little to the transmutation of the
 colour from red to Whyte.

Howe the
 colour of the
 seede is
 transmuted.

Liquid thin-
 ges sauou-
 reth of the
 nature of the
 vessels thro-
 ugh which
 it runneth.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the
 seede is, receyueth alwayes a nature of
 the place, mine, or conduite, by which it
 runneth and passeth, so that when the
 conduite is very small and narrowe, and
 long withal, then the liquour that pas-
 seth through it, receyueth and sauou-
 reth so muche the more the nature and
 condition of that vessell or conduite. As
 for an example: If there were a conduit
 or pipe made of lead, whose length were
 ten foote, and the inner compasse, holo-
 nesse, or cavitie of the same, but so much
 that

that an heere myght passe thoroꝝe it :
 then say I, that a gallō oz quart of wa-
 ter passing and thrilling through that
 narowe conduite, should sauour muche
 moze of the nature and qualitie of lead,
 then though the holownesse of the a-
 foresayde conduite, beyng styll of the
 abouenamed length, were so large that
 a bowle myght enter and passe thoroꝝe
 the same. For this reason, that when
 the water hath to passe thoroꝝe so na-
 rowe passage, it maketh the longer iur-
 ney, and yeldeth the smaller threade oz
 streen, and therfore is touched moze im-
 mediately and intierly of the insydes oz
 inner walles of the conduite. And fur-
 ther, well ye wote that a little quanti-
 tie is sooner ouercome & altered, then a
 great. As a sponefull of wine standyng
 all nyght in a pewter oz brasen pot, shal
 sauour much moze of the potte, then a
 pynte of the same. Lyke wise, yf a man
 woulde coole hoat drynke by pouryng
 of it out of one pot oz cup into another,
 sooner and moze perfectlye shall the cir-

A little quan-
 titie sooner o-
 uercome then
 a greater.

The first Booke.

The pollicle
of nature.

The trans-
mutation of
bloude into
sperme.

cumstant colde ayre alter and coole it,
beyng poured out very softly, makynge
therof a fine and small streene, then yf he
dyd the same hastly. And truely this
engine and pollicie doth nature vse in
euery part where she causeth any nota-
ble transmutation, making the matter
transmutable to passe thoroowe longe
strayghtes & narrowe turagayne lanes,
the matter bowyng, enclynyng, and
apting it selfe alwayes to the dispositi-
on and nature of the vesselles, thoroowe
whiche it cooleth or runneth, so that the
sperme or seede of man or woman, being
attracted by the foresaid seede bringers
into the stoness, passeth by many narrow
strayghtes, which beyng before vayne
bloud and artire bloud, by vertue of the
places through whiche it had to passe,
becommeth from red colour to whyte,
& of much more perfection then it was
before. For this transmutation of bloud
into sperme, is not only in colours, but
also in properties and absolute perfecti-
on. What greater wonder or miracle is
there,

there, wherin we may knowledg and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consider howe that of the meate and dzyne whiche we dayly do eate, by digestiō first of the stomacke, the fine iuyce thereof is seperated from the drosse and grosser part, & then after at the seconde hande, the foresayde iuyce passyng thoro the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thoro infinite smal baynes, there transmuted into bloud, from the lyuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the whiche the hart drawyng part, transmuted certayne thereof into Artire bloud. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the artire bloud, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparne: Which sparne bestowed and conceaued where it shoulde be, becommeth mankynde.

This foresayde seede, as we saide before, is nothing so firme, perfect, absolute and mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not cal this any imperfection or lack in womā, for the womā in her

Holue meate
and dzyne is
transmuted
into bloud.

The seede in
woman, not
so firme as in
man.

The first Booke.

kinde, and for the office & purpose wherefore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neither is Woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtyer and strong, the Woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the Horse, the Lion, the D. liphant, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, compar yng one man to another, suche as be gelded and want the genitories, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, then other, in voyce womālyke, in gesture and condition nice, in softnes of skin and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength and force impotent, nothing manly ne bold, the whiche imbecilitie in them, maye well be named imperfection. For imperfection is, whē that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie which commonly by nature

Who be vnperfecter the one then the other.

nature is in all other, or the more part of that kynde, comparynge it to other of the same kynde, & not of another kynde.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Nowe shall I declare what becommeth of the seede being thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

¶ Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the angles and corners of the Matrix. Cap. xi.



At the lower ende & foote or base of the braded body, wher it is infixed & planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone, there is the begynnyng of

another vessel, which may be called the seede caryer, in Latin *Vas semen deferens*, Of the seede caryers. whose body is whyte and hardishe, like an harde sinewe. And from that part where it taketh his begynnyng, it passeth

The first Booke.

seth downewardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more exprelye perceiue in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remountyng bywarde, creepyng along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the middle region of the stone on that side, at the way as it creepeth, firmly fastened and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasted them selues to the walles, by which they creepe.

The belly and inner syde of the foresaide seede carier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundysh and smothe. From the begynnyng & head of this vessell, to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yele when they slyde fast or hastly, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or wreathes

Wreathes nere ioyned together: howebeit, these Wreathes be not so frequent and thicke in the Woman as in the man. Therefore this parte of the seede carriers may be called the Worme, in Latin, *Corpus lumbricosum*, for because that it hath many conuolucions, as Wormes lying together haue.

Of the part
called the
worme.

And yf ye be disposed to seperate this forenamed Worme from the face of the stone with a sharpe knyfe, ye shall perceaue no maner of holonesse or cavitie of bayne or other cōduite, but as it were a ruggednesse, by reason of seperation from the partie, to whom it was before so surely annexed. And yet no doubt, there is verely in it cavitie and holownesse, by and thoroowe the whiche seede is caried into the angles of the Matrix. Nowe then when this foresayde Worme body hath attayned to the myddle region (as it were) of the stone, it begynneth to depart frō the body of the stone, and is no more (as it was before) thicke

The first Booke.

thicke Wreathed, but playne, smothe, & rounde, lyke a rounde sinewe, With an vn sensible holonesse, departyng frō the stone along the insyde of the belly, ouerthwarting the guttes, to the angle or corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it proceade from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not strayght or forthryght, but somewhat bowyng & crokyng it selfe in two or thre crokes by the way. These seede carpers receiue the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones and foresaid seede byngers, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they whiche do open dead women, shall alwayes perceyue in the holownes of the Matrix, these two angles or corners specialllye bedewed or imbued with a whyte slymye and thynne cleare matter, whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in women hauyng greate
and

and feruent desire to any man, this seede doth issue from this foresayde place, downe along to the womans priuie passage, moistring all that part, as it were with a dewe. Aristotle and other mo, do suppose that this seede in woman, serueth for no other purpose, but onely to recite, moue, and stirre the woman to pleasure. But some peradventure would thinke that this were but a simple & an ydle or slender purpose, whiche if they did more nerely consider the matter, should perceyue it to be a iust, great, and necessary cause. For if that the god of nature had not instinced, and inset in the body of man and woman, such a vehement and ardent appetite and lust, the one lawfully to company with the other, neyther man ne woman would neuer haue ben so attentife to the workes of generation and encrease of posteritie, to the vtter decaye in shorthe tyme of all mankinde. For ye shal heare some women in tyme of theyr trauaile, meued through great payne and intolerable

The prickes
of nature.

No ioy with
out some so-
rowe.

terable anguifhe, forfwear and bowe
them felfe, neuer to company With a
man agayne, yet after that the panges
passed, Within fhort Whyle, for entyre
loue to theyr husbandes, and finguler
naturall delyte betwene man and wo-
man, they forget both the fozow passed,
and that that is to come. Suche be the
priuie Worke of God, and fuche be the
pricke of nature, Which neuer createth
no fpeciall pleasure vnaccompanied
With fome fozowe, neyther is there for
the moſte part any fozowe, but that it
hath annexed fome ioy or comfort, leſſe
or more, to alleniate and lyghten the
burthen and weyght of difpleafure.

Here is declared the ſituation of the
blader in women.

Capit. xii

Now for the vicinite and neigh-
bourhood that is betwene the
priuie paſſage and the bladder,
here I will declare a little the
nature of the bladder.

The

The bladder in woman is assituate and set vppon the forepart of the Mother, whose necke is annexed, fastened, & vnite within the priuie passage, vppon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very harde to seperate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the whiche necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ring, firming and clasping the vrine passage in such wise, that no vrine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it thereto: Which thing cometh to passe, other when the bladder is ouercharged with vrine, or els that the vrine, although that it be but little in qualitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, which for the sharpenes and eagernes of the qualitie prickung and ticklyng the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe manye tymes for little quantitie. &c.

The Muskle
of the bladder.

Howe the
bladder
Muskle is
forced to open
it selfe.

The

The descrip-
tion of the
bladder.

The body of the bladder is rounde, into the Which a lyttle aboue the necke thereof, entreth the seconde brine conduites, deriued from eche kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great master bayne, and lyke wyle of the Artyre, is situate a kydney, in latin called *Ren*. And to euery of them from the sayde great bayne and great Artyre, is there deriued a braunche of the bayne, and another of the Artyre, by the which braunches the kydneyes do attract and drawe bloud vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr natie office) seperate and deuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, otherwise called brine downe to the bladder, through the brine baynes or conduites.

Of the stone
engendred
in the backe

In these kydneyes is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, eyther of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or pceces

peeces therof, descende from the raynes
oz kidnees into the bladder, by the fore-
named vrine conduites, and so from the
bladder out at the yarde, Where, yf the
peeces be rockie oz bigge, it causeth to
the partie in the voydyng of them, vn-
tollerable paynes and torment. And
note that for the moste part, the ryght
kydney euermore standeth hyer then
the lefte.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande
that when the vrine, pisse, oz Water is
once entred through the foresayd vrine
conduites, into the bladder, it cannot
returne vpwarde agayne the Way that
it came (Were the bladder neuer so full)
for because that where as the said vrine
conduites do enter into the bladder, in
the inner face of the bladder, there be set
before the mouth oz gull of the condui-
tes, certaine litle skinnie flappes, which
suffer any thyng to enter in, but when
it is once entred, these skinnie flappes
close the passage, and defende, that no-
thyng can rebounde, ne refluē backe a-
gayne,

The vrine
once entred
into the
bladder, can
not reuert.

The first booke.

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bellowes, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellowes great store of wynde or ayre at once, but when the bellowes is full of wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somwhat, there wyll none thereof returne agayne out by that waye, the flappes of leather crosseing and defendyng the passage: yea, the more vehementlye and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellowes together, the faster and more stifly doth the flaps stop the way, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellowes, the violence and force of the wynde closyng and stoppyng his owne way, so that the bellowes would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sayyng that the sayde skinnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftyly, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then any notable quantitie or qualitie of the vryne, gathered

thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muskle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passyng thorow the priuie passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also as in the raynes, is there in many people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, distury, with other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is verye harde or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured without insition and cuttyng out. But women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, holbebeit notwithstanding, dyuers of them be herewith greuously encombred.

The stone engendred in the bladder.

Of the vaynes whiche resort to the Matrix and the partes thereof. Item of the termes and their course with the causes therof.

Capit. xiii.

F 2

In.



Inasmuche as the absolute vnderstandyng of the nature of the termes in Women, cannot well be perceiued, except first it be knowe

What vaines, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the Matrix, therfore first I Wyl entreate of them, & then cōsequently of the termes.

Three notable vaines resorting to the Matrix.

Waynes then notable, which may be percepued by Anothomie to reach from severall partes of the great *Vena caua*, or master vayne, to the Matrix and the partes therof, be three, to whom for the more cleare, distinct, and euident doctrine sake, I Will geue three distinct and diuers names. The fyrst shalbe named the bottome vaines of the Matrix. The second, the necke vaines of the Matrix. The thyrde, the share vaines.

The bottome vaines of the Matrix.

The bottome vaines be they, which proceade and take theyr beginning at the seede bringer vaines, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the Matrix, there dilatyng them selfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small slippes,
nouryng the body of the Matrix, as
hath ben sayde alre dye in the ende of
the .ix. Chapter.

As touching the necke baynes of the
Matrix, ye shall vnderstande that in the
foresaid .ix. Chapter, I shewed you how
that the great maister bayne, and the
great artire associate together, when
they attayne about *Os sacrum*, they begin
to deuide them selues in two partes
forke wyse, of the whiche the ryght (& so
lyke wyse the left) part of the forke is re-
diuided in other two partes forke wyse
also, wherof the vppermost and grea-
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it
proceadeth into the vter parte of the
thygh, & so along downe to the legges
and feete. The innermost and lefte or
smaller part or bayne of this second di-
uision, where it parteth from the vpper-
most, passeth downe along vntyll
it come to the great hole whiche is al-
wayes in the share bone, thozow which

The necke
baynes.

Of the necke
vaynes of the
Matrix.

The share
vaynes.

it entereth into the inner parte of the
thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it
attayne the saide hole of the sharebone,
it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal
braunches in the netke of the Matrix,
and the nether parte of the body of the
Matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye
may more clearly se in the figure hereof

The share vaynes take theyr begyn-
nyng at the insyde of the abouenamed
vppermost and greatest vayne, euen at
the place where it beginneth to passe o-
uer the hockle bone, fro whence this slip
is deriued on eche syde, that is, both the
ryght and the lefte, vnto the myddle of
the share bone, where in men it sendeth
forth braunches into the skinne that co-
uereth the priuie parte and the coddles,
& also the *Perineum*, whiche is the place
that is betwene the fundament and
the yarde. In women this vaine where
it attayneth the myddle parte of the
sharebone, it deryueth and spreadeth it
selfe into the lappes sydes or extreame
ende of the priuie passage, and also in
the

the sayde *Perineum*. And this shall suffice for the declaration of the vayne which resort to the Matrix and her partes, saue that ye muste vnderstande, that loke what order or procession of vayne commeth to the Matrix from the right syde, the same selfe order is lykewyse in the lefte syde. And agayne, that none of these vayne runne to the Matrix or otherwhere, vnassociaie of an Arterie.

Nowe to come to the declaration of the nature of termes, ye shall vnderstand that they be called in Latin *Menstrua*, so, because that once in a moneth they happen alwayes to womankind after. xiiii or .xv. yeres of age passed (beyng in theyr perfect health) In Englyshe they be named *Termes*, because they retourne eftsoones at certayne seasons, tymes and termes, and some name them theyr flowers. What name soeuer ye geue vnto it, ye shall witte, that the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng els but the issuing of certayne bloud,

What is meant by this worde *Termes*.

comprehended in the vaines of the Matrix, there by little and little collected and gathered betwene terme & terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which bloud, the Matrix vaines do attract from the great *vena caua*, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so muche as there is space betwene the one hauyng of the flowres and the other (which is comonly thre wekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in fyllyng, and yf they were soner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth againe. For when they be once replenysed, they can not conueniently or naturally containe or drawe any more, tyll they be lyghtned and discharged of that that is drawn alredy.

Wherfore at the foresayde certayne circuites and termes, the smal endes of these Matrix baynes open them selues
in

in the inner face or superficie of the Matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this bloud, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in women, is this: Forso muche as almyghtie God had so institute that women shoulde be conceaued, efformed, or fastyoned, augmented, nourysed, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or Matrix to be the sayde receptacle, & house of office wherein she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceaued.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue foode and nourysment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath provided

The cause of
the ordinance
of termes.

The first Booke.

uided, that there shoulde alwayes be
prest and redy a continuall course and
resort of bloud in the vaines of the Ma-
trix, as a very naturall course, spryng,
fountayne or Well, euermoze redy to ar-
rouse Water, and nozise the feature, so
sone as it shalbe cōceiued, yea although
the Woman do neuer conceiue, other be-
cause she accompanieth not with man,
other els for some other infirmitie, yet
is there no faulte in nature, who hath
prepared a place and foode to be at all
tymes in a redynesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeined
for this necessary purpose, yet when the
purpose fayleth (as it doth when there
is no feature in the Wombe to be fedde
therewith) it shoulde be to the place but
a burthen and vnprofitable load there
to remayne or lynger, when she
say, at her set and prescript time she la-
boureth to cleare her self of it, and to ex-
pell it as superfluous and seruing to no
ble. The which thing when she hath so
done, yet vnto the sayde vaynes of this
con-

continuall spryng, resorteth of newe a-
gayne other freshe bloud in the place of
that that is departed, whiche by litle
and litle coling into them, in the wont
circuite of time refilleth them, and then
yet issueth agayne, and so this continu-
al course doth kepe alwayes in women,
from theyr youth, tyll they come to a-
bout fyftie yeres of age, or litle more or
lesse, at what time naturally this spring
dryeth away, which when it is gone, it
is impossible for the woman to beare a-
ny mo children. For were the womā ne-
uer so yong & lusty, yet yf she neuer had
her termes (as some suche there be) she
shal neuer also haue no childre, albeit it
may be that she may conceaue, but the
seede conceaued can not proue, but mel-
teth & issueth forth agayne for lacke of
nourishment. Itē ye shal note, that where
as some wryte & saye that the womens
termes folowe the course of the moone,
so that in the full or in the wane of the
moone they shuld alwayes come, this is
not true, for they haue them at one time
and

They that
haue no ter-
mes can not
beare childre

The first Booke.

Termes
come not to
all women
lyke.

and other in all seasons of the moone. Againe, as they come not to all Women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of theyr duraunce not all one in e- uery Woman, for in some they lynger vpon them. v. vi. vii. yea .viii. dayes at ech terme, to their great effeoblishment and strong paines in the backe. In some other comonly they passe not the space of thzee dayes at the vttermost, where- fore such sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, all Women (for the most part) which be of very delicate & moyst complexions (as the sanguyne chieflye be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme doth it endure vpon them. And contrary, such as be drie and collerike, other by nature, or labour and trauayle, & such that be of complection cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme do they indure vpon them. After what maner the feature conceaued is fedde and nourysed with this bloudd (matter at other times of the termes) I wyll

Wyll declare, When that I haue some
What first shewed the nature of cer-
tayne caules, wherein the feature con-
ceyued is Wrapped and inuolued.

¶ Of the three caules oz wrappers
wherein the Infant is lapped.

Capit. xiiii.



The seede conceyued
into the Wombe oz
matrix of the Mo-
ther, anon it is am-
plected, clipped, &
embrased of the in-
ner face of the Ma-
trix, the mouth oz
port thereof in the

The feature
conceyued is
wrapped in
three caules.

meane Whyle closed and shut exquisite-
lye. The seede then when it hath ben a
certayne little space in the Wombe, by
the naturall heate, oz rather by the in-
set and ingenite vertue of that place, is
enuironed & enclosed rounde with three
dyuers coates, caules, oz Wrappers,
Whiche in Latine they call (*Inuolucra.*)

The first and moſte immediate oz
nearest

The first
caule.

nearest to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleare caule or skinne, Whiche contayneth rounde about the Whole feature, and yet is fastened to no part of the feature, but onlye at the nauell, by certayne baynes and Artyzes, Whereof We Wyll fy take anone, this caule in Greke is called *Ammios*, in Latine *Agnua*, for cause it is as dilicate as lambes be. The Midwifes commonly call it the coyfe or byggyn of the chylde, and some call it the chylde's shert, the Which also manye tymes proceadeth alone With the childe, eyther vpon the childes head, or one of the armes or legges. And then the Women reserue it as a thyng that shoulde betoken some great lucke to the chylde in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chylde hath not such a coyfe, because it doth appeare but seldome alone, vnaccompanied With the other caules. Betwene this Wrapper or coyfe, and the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowish sweat Which euapozeth continually from the
skyn

Skinne of the infant, whylest it is in the Wombe.

The second Wrapper or caule in Greke is called *Allantoides*, in Latin *Farcinosa*, in Englishe, these two termes do signifie (haggiswise) for because that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outward skinne or bagge of an haggisse pudding. The inner face and superficie of this caule is smoth and moyste, fastened to no part of the first Wrapper, but onlpe at the nauell of the chylde, and contayneth also rounde about in his compasse and cavitie or holownes, the whole childe and the saide first caule.

Betwene this and the fyrst caule, is gathered together all the store of vryne that the chylde maketh, durpng the time it is in the mothers Wombe, wherin the industry of nature is to be lauded, which so prouideth, that this pisse or vryne of the infant should be expelled betwene these two caules, and not remaine about the body therof, lest with the acrimonye, and eager sharpenesse hereof

The seconde wrapper.

Wher the vryne of the childe becometh.

The first booke.

hereof, it should endamage and greue the tender body of the baby.

The thyrde
wrapper na-
med Chorion

The thyrde wrapper of the feature is named *Chorion* of the Greekes, in Latin, *secunde* or *secundina*, in Englishe ye may call it the secundine: Albeit that in the seconde booke folowynge, I do commonly vse to name the hole afterbyrth, the secundine. And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name of (*secunde* or *secundina*) to this wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (*secunde* or *secundina*) is proper & mooste due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothing els but an issuyng forth, and procedynge of these three wrappers or caules, together with such grosse extrementes as haue ben engendred and remaynyng in the wombe, durynge the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the childe is fyrst proceeded & come to lyght, for first issueth the infante, and then secondly, the foresaid afterbyrth, & therfore it maybe iustlye called the second birth or secundine.

This

This Wrapper or caule then, doth not vniuersally, and in euery part compasse and couer the infante, as the other two Wrappers do, but onlye the myddle region, as it Were from the vpper part of the Waste, to the share of the infante, so that it is compassed With this Wrapper as With a broade hoope ryng, the latitude or breadth Whereof, is commonly to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi. or. viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe round about the body therof, as it Were a broade gyrt or swadlyng bande, but yet ye must not vnderstand that it shuld touche immediatly the body of the infant, for betwene this and the bodye therof (as I haue declared before) be the foresaid two other caules or Wrappers, Whiche generally incloseth rounde the whole corps of the infant, wher as this hoope caule compasseth and couereth but the middle region therof only.

The office and propertie of this Wrapper is suche: First the vtter face of it cleaueth and is affixed or basted verye

The office
of the hoope
caule

exactly to the inner face and Walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnumerable small baynes and artires, which at this tyme do shewe them selues more clearely in the face of the matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euery parte thereof, touching the same Matrix, so that the said hoope caule and the inner syde of the Matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediat meanes of the sayde baynes and braunches, euen much lyke as the body of the Iuy tree basteth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the Walles or trees, whereby it crepeth by many hearie fibres or small threedes.

This coniunction betwene the Matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so broade, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe rounde about in the Matrix. And these foresaid baynes and artires do not only knyt and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substance of the hoope caule at euery part

part thereof. And within the sayd substance of the hoope caule, these manyfold small braunches meete, & enter mingle the one with the other, the baynes with the baynes, and the Artires with the Artires, so that in theyre recountre and meetyng, they produce alwayes bigger and bigger baynes and artires, (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great baynes, and two great artires, the whiche foure vessels from hence proceade together, passe and perse through the other two caules spoken of before, and so entreteth into the Nauill of the childe, so that the thre caules by the meanes hereof be attached, nayled, and fastened to the childes Nauil, and when they be entred into the Nauill, the two baynes degenerate in one, the whiche fro this place mounteth vpyward along the inner superficie of the belly, vntill it haue attained into the liuer, wher it entering, deuideth it self again into many flippes, so that no doubt the bloud is carried through this Nauill bayne, fro the

The first booke.

vaynes of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the childe, from whence againe it is attracted into al partes nourishable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyres passe from the Nauell downewarde, the one along the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder, the other alonge the left, till it attayne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Thoro we these Artires, liuely spirite and freshe ayre is deriued out of the mother, into the chylde, where with the naturall heate of the chylde is viui- fied and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the fore- sayde nauill vayne, when the chylde is borne, begin to wyther and drye, euery day more and more, & become much like a harpestring, without any holownes or cavitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessell, which taketh his origi- nall at the bottome, founde, or vpper part of the chyldes bladder, and exten- deth it selfe to the nauill of the Infant, through which it passeth vntill it come
betwene

betwene the first and the seconde caule
 without the chyldes body, where, by a
 priuie issue deuised by nature for the
 same purpose, is expelled the brine of
 the Infant, proceeding by this brine
 wayne from the bladder, as partly was
 spoken of before, that part of this brine
 vaine which is within the body, when
 the chyld is borne dryeth and wythe-
 reth away, as I sayde of the other.

Which way
 the chyld
 doth expell
 the brine.

The innen superficie or face of this
Chorion is very strongly affixed and faste-
 ned to the vtter superficie of the seconde
 caule named *Allantoides*.

As for the bastynge that is betwene
 the *Matrix* and *Chorion*, many tymes it
 is weakened and effeoblyshed by reason
 of euyll, fleigmaticke, or colericke hu-
 mours there about, betwene the bastin-
 ges conceaued, whiche ouermuche ha-
 bouiding, do cloy the said bastynge vaines
 or strynges, whereby many tymes the
 one seuereth from the other before con-
 uenient season, & so causeth abozement

The mouthes or specks of the vaines in

The second Booke.

The substance of Chorion.

the Matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Chorion be called in Latin *Acetabula* & *Cotiledones*, for what cause, or vpon what reason, is both needlesse and vnprofitable here to be rehearsed. Agayne, the substance of this Chorion is not thinne lyke a skin, bladder, or call: but of all other partes of the body, it may be most worthly resembled to the spleane or melt in a man or beast, the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is as much or more as the thicknes of the thumbe, the colour swartishe black. Of which colour also the bloud therein conteyned, is as the remayne and refuse of the purer, attract and drawen naturallye of the Infant, by the aboue named nauyll vaine. So that, to be short, Chorion is the immediat receptacle and receiuer of all the vaines and artires, to be deduced from the Matrix to the chylde, and the chylde receiueth only at his hande the two Vaynes and Artires, whiche by the waye as they passe & pearse thorow the other two calles, towarde the chylde's Nauyll, they sende into eche of the

the caules innumerable small eye baynes and artires, whereby the caules be susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to stooze the selues in the Matrix baynes, and at certayne circuites to issue forth. Nowe when there is a feature or chyld in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceade no more forth (as superfluous) but remaine and be reserved to the necessary nutriment of the feature, and some part therof reflueth & is reuerted to the womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of bloud, as hath ben written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceiued & abused, whiche call the Termes the womans purgation, or the clenstyng of theyr bloudde, as who should say, that it were the refuse, drosse and byler part of the other bloudde remaynyng in the body, naturally euery

The first Booke.

The termes
be of so hol-
some blood,
as any other
parte in the
body.

The chyld
beyng in the
wombe, no-
ryshed of the
purest blood.

moneth sequestrate and seperated from the purer, for the vilitie and euill qualitie therin comprehended. For vndoubtedly this blood is euen as pure & hol- some as all the reste of the blood in any part of the body els.

Is it to be thought, that nature would feede the tender & dilicate Infant in the mothers Wombe, with the refuse of the blood, or not rather with the purest of it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she woulde that the pure blood commyng frō the Matrix baynes should be made yet purer, she suffereth not the same to enter immediatly into the Infant, but first vseth another meane, and sendeth it into *Chorion* or the hoope cal (as I haue sayd before) Where truely it hath a cer- tayne circulation and another digesti- on, wherby it is defecate, and clenfed ve- ry exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature attenuated and fined, and so at the laste sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all the grosser part in the spungy bodye of the hoope caule.

Yet much more are to be detested and
abhorred the shamefull lyes and flaunder that *Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis mulierum*, and diuers other mo haue Written,
of the venemous and daungerous infectiue nature of the womans flowres or termes, the Whiche all be but dreames and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr fond wordes here, were but losse of inke & paper, wherefore let them passe with theyr auctours.

Slaunders of
the termes.

Which of the thre Matrix baynes conteyne the
Termes, and howe the mylke commeth
to the womans brestes.

Cap. xv.



Shewed you here before, that to thre different partes & regions of the Matrix, there resorted from thre different partes of *vena caua*, thre sundrie bayne slippes. Now whiche of these slippes shoulde bryng the bloud

The first Booke.

bloud called the Termes into the Matrix, or from which of them the Termes shoulde proceade, it is harde clearely to discusse, but only by lykely coniectures. And yet it is a thyng very necessary to be known, for the redyer aduertisement howe medicines for that purpose shoulde be applied in that place, when neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the Termes by some casualtie stopped, or els contrary, to restrayne them immoderately flowyng. For yf the bottome baynes of the Matrix do contayne only the Termes, then shoulde any medicine conueyed vnderneath profyte nothyng, except it be conueyed so farre vp, that it maye attayne within the holownesse of the Matrix, the whiche is verye litle when the woman is not with chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the Matrix do only conteyne these termes, then neded medicines to be applied no farther then to that place. As for the thirde Matrix baynes, there is none
that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to proceade from them: But many there be, which do suppose the termes to issue both at the necke vaines and at the botto-
tome vaines also, but most notably at the necke vaines, for because (say they) that these vaines do appeare more conspicuous and notable to the eyes when a woman is cut open, then do the botto-
tome vaines, which may be very skantly perceived, wherfore they thinke that these necke vaines shoulde be the greater stirrer of Termes.

Agayne (say they) we se many tymes that after the woman is conceaued, yet doth ther issue Termes tyl the third or fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth moneth, the which nowe at this tyme cannot proceade out of the Matrix, for the port or mouth therof, according to authors opinions, is so closed after the seede conceaued, that the poynt of a needle can not enter but by violence and force. Wherfore they conclude, that the Termes at this tyme muste needes
spryng

spring out of the necke vayne, and not out of the bottome vaines.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onely out of the bottome vaines, & out of such of the necke vaines as spreade them selfe onely within the Matrix, as maye be seene in the figure. For insomuch as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onely to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke vaines of the Matrix serue, Where there can neuer be any conception, nether the seede there can remayne: And as concernyng the issuing of the Termes after conception, I saye that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as bloud is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a needle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betwene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes,

the

the poynte of a nedle wyll not easely enter, yet water or any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and euen so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shall not folow that the seede shoulde passe out therat, as well as the bloud, for the seede is of a more fast, compacte, and stedfaste substance. And besydes this, by that time that the seede hath ben but a daye or two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the natural heate of the place, yea, and is compassed with a thinne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it wyll not so soone issue out of the Matrix without great iniury.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Physitions do counsell women which be desirous to conceane, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, or waterynnes of the Matrix (whereby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes and vapours vnderneath, or other
medi-

medicines at the mouth, to dry the sayd humidities, immediatly after the Termes be passed, and not vpon the commyng of them, for yf the woman should be conceyued vpon the comming of the sayde Termes, then woulde they commixt them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner, and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the termes.

But immediatly after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceyued, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the Matrix vaines be yet open, after the lettynge forth of the Termes, they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne the selues with the feature, by meanes of caules wherein the feature is inuolued, and chiefly of *Chorion* named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayde

sayde here before.
 Yet when the seede hath ben three or
 foure Weekes in the Wombe, it is not of
 sufficient quantitie to consume into his
 nutriment al the bloud that was wont
 to resort into the Matrix baynes, wher-
 fore the first, second, yea, & third moneth
 sometimes at the womans wont tyme
 of Termes, there issueth and she weth
 some bloud more or lesse, the more in the
 whiche were wont at other tymes to
 haue aboundaunce of them. &c. And ye
 shall note that when the child is concei-
 ued, & that the caule *Chorion* is fastened &
 basted to the matrix by the vaines ther-
 of, yet do not al the vaines of the matrix
 attaine to the said *Chorion*, but a certaine
 so far as *Chorion* doth reach, howbeit the
 larger that *Chorion* groweth with y^e child,
 the mo baynes doth he couer, wherfore
 fro those baynes that be not yet affixed
 vnto *Chorion*, do the termes flow at this
 time: But whē the child beginneth once
 to come to a greater perfectiō & growth,
 then is all the Terme bloudde reserued

in the Matrix, as little enough to satisfie the chylde, and then also part therof mounteth vp into the brestes, and becometh mylke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

¶ Yet agayne to confirme myne opinion, that the Termes do onely issue out of the vaute of the Matrix: We shall vnderstande, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers Women in cure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thruste and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the street, beyng both neare the tyme of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatly herevppon, theyr Termes dyd issue. And so continued dayly to the one of them, the space of halfe a yere, & to the other a whole yere, so that after that tyme the Termes stayed agayne, and issued no more dayly as before, but once in foure wekes, at what tyme they voyded great lumpes, kakes, or cloddes of bloud, congealed together

611

euē

even lyke the liuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betwene eche voydyng of these lumpes of bloud, (Whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure Wekes) euery day continually appeared and issued there Whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare, the particuler occasions of this maner of voydyng of the Termes, ye shal vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix baynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of bloud, and that nerer theyr tyme of purgation, vppon Whiche bracke, the bloud dayly issued afterward, Whereby the vigour & kinde heate of the Matrix, by little and little decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnes succeeded. By Whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the Matrix, Wered the more contract and narrower, for colde closeth, knitteth and congeleth, hereto helpyng not a little the great vse of colde byndyng medicines, Whiche eche of them dyd apply to

this place at the simple counsaile of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed and contracted, the blood wont alwayes dayly to procede, remaineth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it congeleth and cluddereth together, lyke as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel, and that the blood stande styll in it, the space of. v. or. vi. houres, it wylbe concret and congiled in a cludder lyke a lyuer, the watery part thereof swimming and flitting aboue vpon the face of it: and euen so is it of the blood congiled in the Matrix, so that when there is so muche of this congiled blood concealed together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any lenger, then violently and perforce, it issueth out together, with farre greater perill, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a childe.

The whyte flowres that yssued, during

ring the time that this bloud gathered in the Matrix, was (no doubt) the very wateryshe part, that fleted when the bloud congeled, for that water can neuer congele as the bloud doth, wherfore euery day as fast as the bloud dyd congele in the Matrix, so faste also dyd the water seperate it selfe from the bloud, and so yssued.

Notwithstanding I am not ignorant that the very white flowres in dede do proceade from the seede cariars, into the angles or corners of the Matrix, and so fro thence outwarde, the which disease also men haue many tymes. And it commeth eyther of the aboundaunce of fleugme in the body, or of the corruptio and euill qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwaies fro within the Matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item I haue sene diuers other women, in whom their Termes haue staid, the space of. vi. viii. & x. wekes, wherewith

The first booke.

their bellies haue encreased and waxed bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde. Notwithstanding, at the last haue voyded suche lyke lumps of bloud, as I haue spoken of here before, not without great peryll and daunger to them in the voydyng, wherewithall their bellies haue relaxed and decreased agayne. And thus I make an ende, to talke any more of the nature and course of the Termes, and now wil I declare somewhat of the conueyance & course of the milke into the womans brestes, for there is great affinitye, communitie, and familiaritie betwene the Matrix and the brestes, whiche naturally do perceyue and feele anon, when the Matrix hath conceived and then begin they to brue & to make ready theyr part, agaynst the time that the Matrix hath all done her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to moste mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe Whiche Way the sayde Terme shoulde attayne from the Matric to the breastes, ye shall vnderstand, that the vppermost and greatest vayne of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the xiii. chap. Where it attaineth the hockle bone, redye to passe out of the holonesse of the belly into the thigh, before that it perse the kell called *Peritonium*, it sendeth forth a notable vayne braunch, which from hence mounteth vwarde alonge the belly betwene the right Muskle and the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue the nauell, Where the extreme or vpper ende thereof deuideth it selfe in manyfolde litle braunches, meetyng and entermynglyng them selues With the extreme litle braunches or slippes of another lyke vayne, descendyng from the vppermost chestbone, downe along the inside of the chest, and the insyde of the vpper part of the belly, vntyll it meete With the foresayde mountyng vayne, a litle aboue the nauell.

And ye shall note, that this vayne

braunche proceeding from *vena cava*, at the highest chestbone downward along the inner syde of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeldeth certayne little slippes and small braunches of it self betwene the ribbes into the brestes. Wherfore the consent of all aucthours is, that by the meanes of these descendyng vayne braunches at both sides of the body, & the other ascendyng vayne braunches on both sydes of the belly, there shoulde be great communitie and feloweship betwene the brestes in women, and the Matrix or the Wombe.

For doutlesse by common experience, ye may se that when the time of conceytion in women is, & that by this meanes the Termes be stopped, then as the termes do deminish and waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe euery daye more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of bloud wonte at other tymes to boyde in the name of Termes, now at this tyme by the prouidencie and prouisiō of nature, is
retay:

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate another waye, that is to say, sent from the vaynes of the Matrix parte thereof vpwarde by the fozenamed ascendyng vayne branches, at their handes agayne receiued and naturally attracted by the other descendyng vrest vaynes, through whom it is carped into the brestes, where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into whyte mylke, being before red bloud, redy now prepared to noryshe the chyld when nature shall sende it into the worlde. At Agayne, so long as the woman geueth sucke to the chyld, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very litle or no quantitie. These be evidences that there should be great familiaritie betwene the Matrix and the brestes, for so much as the ebbing of the one is the flowyng of the other. Wherefore Physicians sometimes, when the flowres issue more vehemently than needeth, they set booyng glasses vnder the

brestes, meanyng therby to reuert and
 returne vpwarde, the matter enclined
 to much downewarde, the which prac-
 tise how much it preuaileth, I Wyl not
 here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-
 cusse the very veritie as neare as reason
 and the knowledge of Anothomie Wyl
 geue leaue, ye shall not vnderstande my
 saynges that I shoulde meane that al-
 ways when the termes stoppe beneath
 by any colde, thought, or other occasi-
 ons, by and by the same bloudde to stye
 and mount vp into the brestes, & there
 to become milke: for the contrary here-
 of is dayly seene. For most commonlye
 they in whom these termes do stop, for
 any other cause then conception, the su-
 perfluous bloud retayned in the body,
 and in the waynes wandryng, causeth
 to the partie great headache, taketh a-
 waye theyr stomacke, and engendreth
 diuers other inconueniences, neither in
 the meane whyle is ther any thynge the
 more mylke in the brestes.

Wherefore ye may well saye, that the
 cause

cause of plentie of mylke in the Womā's
brestes in time of her being With chylde,
and much more afterwarde, commeth
chiefly by a priuie naturall instinction,
Whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at
that tyme more then at any other, to
draw vnto it selfe greater abundaunce
of bloud, conuerting and altering the
same by the proprietie of the place, into
conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenishe
the brest, the Termes to be by any occa-
sion stopped beneath, but there must al-
so concurre the attractiue power, inset
in the brestes to drawe the sayde bloud
(matter at oher tymes of the Termes)
Without which attraction, be the Ter-
mes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the
brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chaūce
that this attractiue power halte or be
not able to attract sufficient matter to
make mylke vpon for the Infant, then
Physitiōs are wont to help the debilitie
of nature, With cuppyng glasses set vp-
on or vnder the brestes, or els With gen-
tle

the attractive emplaisters applied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resort great store of other vaynes, some descending from the vaines of the shoulders, & other some from the vaines passyng by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyson and notable bygnesse, much surmount the quantitie of the abouenamed descending brest vaynes, as it maye appeare evidently in many Women which haue these vaynes appearing in the superficie of their brestes immediatly vnder the skin, very conspicuous & sightful: yet not withstanding it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes should be engendred onely vpon the blood mountyng from the aforesayde ascendyng Matrix vaynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other vaynes, howe conspicuous so euer they be, so that the blood in them comprehended, serueth onely to the nourishment of the substance of the brestes

brestes themselves, and not to the main-
tenance of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner
that nature vseth in circulatynge of the
attracted bloud, wherby alterations is
made from one colour to another, wold
require a longer processe, the which for
brevitie we wil omit at this time, with
many other problemes, doubtles, and
difficulties concernynge the same. And
so we make an ende of this first Booke.

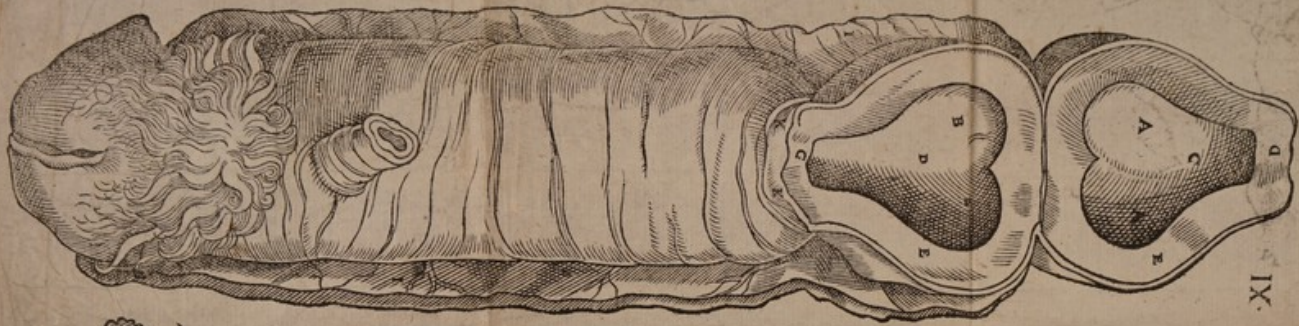
The first Booke.

The declaration by letters, of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye, euery part in woman, mentned in this booke before: Which in the former printings hath ben corrupted, but nowe truely set forth.

The fyrst figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and characters of the same.



In this fyrste fygure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body, laide on the ground, whose *Peritonium* is opened with the Muskels of the Abdomen, and turned ouer towarde the inside, accordyng to the vse of cuttyng. and afterward we haue cut awaye all the bowelles or entrayles from *mesenterium*, the strayte entrayle beyng yet left in the bodye, with also the whole *Mesenterium*, whose pannicles we haue here somwhat taken awaye, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of *mesenterium* might come to light, but this present fygure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it myght so shewe the position of the Matrix or wombe, and the bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the sayde Matrix or wombe beyng moued. For here is as yet no pannicle plukt away from the Matrix or wombe, but that all thynges are here yet whollye seene, lyke wyse as in women some



IX.



VIII.



VII.



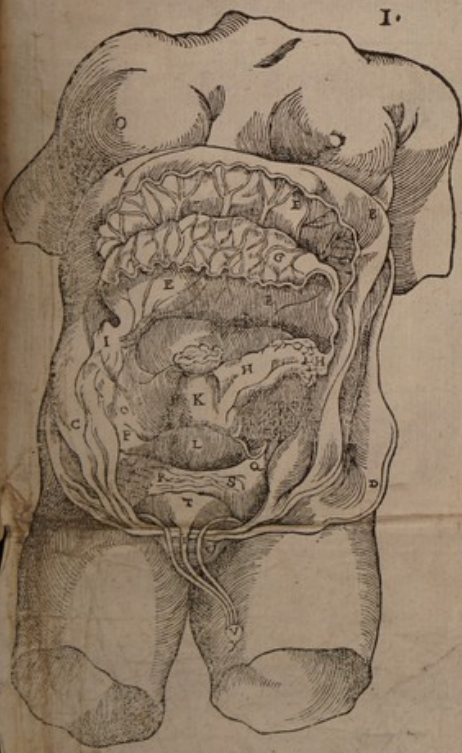
VI.



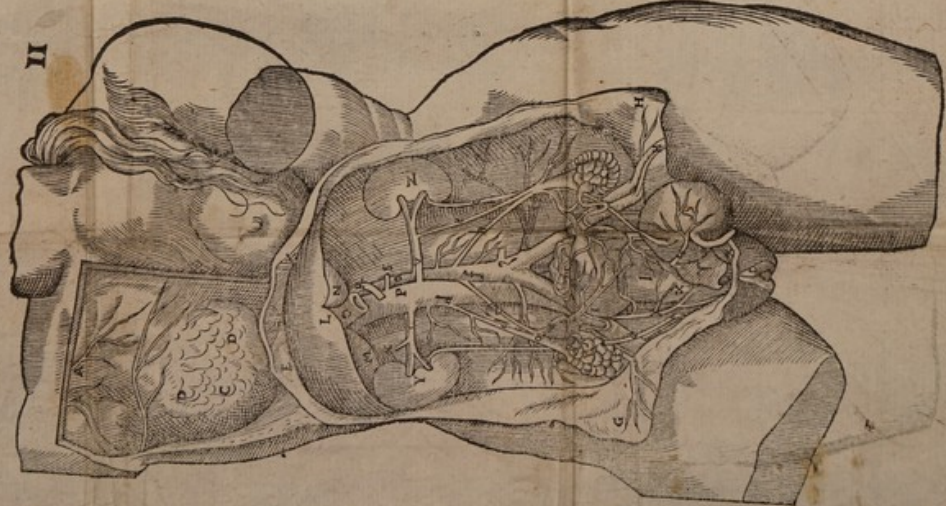
V.



III.

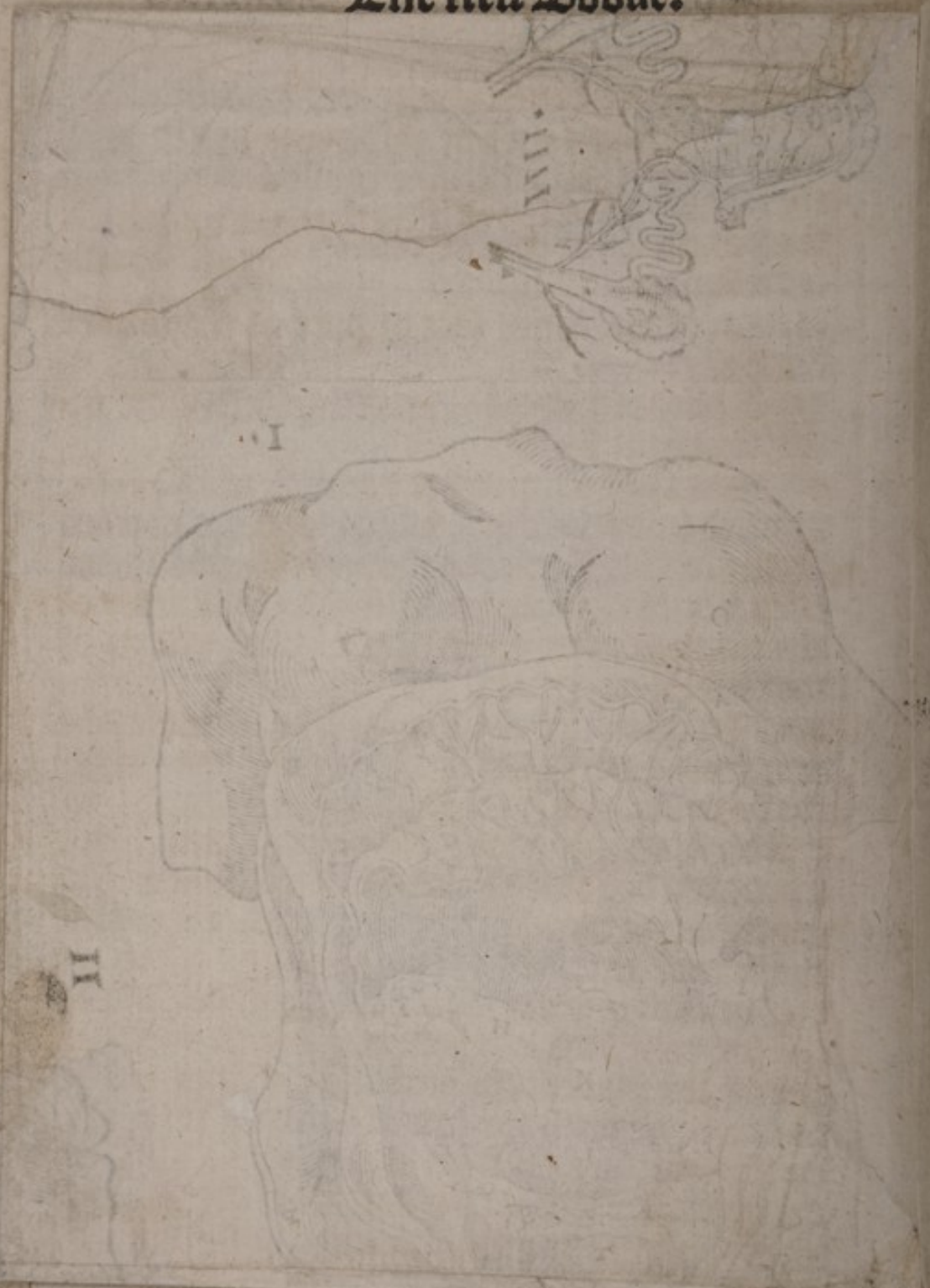


I.



II.

The first Booke.



here yet wholye tenes the wyle up in some

some

Some what fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels being taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be vexed and kylled with long sicknes, and become moſte leanest, then they ſhewe no kynde of proceſſe of veſſels, vnleſſe the pannicles or thynne couerynges be ſeperated a ſunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former ſeate of *Peritonium*.

E E A part of *Mefenterium*, knitting the thynne intrayles to the backe.

F F Here is noted another pannicle of *Mefenterium*, plucked from the other which we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do ſhewe the order of the veſſels of *Mefenterium*, and order of the karnelles put betwene the diſtributions of the veſſels.

H H In this part of *Mefenterium*, the entrayle *Colon* was committed and ſet to, where it was nyest to the ſtraite gut.

I And in this part of *Mefenterium*, dyd conſiſt and ſtande the beginning of the intrayle *Colon*, or his continuance with the thynne intrayles, and alſo the blynde gut.

K The ſtrayte gutte being there cutte of where *Colon* dyd ende, whiche ſeate or place is ryght agaynſt the place of the knitting together of the hockle bone with the loweſt turnyng ioynte of the loynes.

L The former ſeate of the bottom of the *Matrix*, from whence is nothing perceyued pluckt away.

M The right ſtone or teſticle in a women.

N The

The first booke.

N The lefte stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entierly seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause, that we haue in such manner set forth the ryght stone, for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle bringeth downe the seede vessels of a woman, whiche do spryng from *Peritonium*: but we haue vncouered the lefte testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onely without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in any part thereof, but lyeth there onely.

O A pannicle sprynging and growyng forth from the right seate of *Peritonium*, and committing the ryght testicle with the seede vessels on this side, and those vessels, whiche infolde the higher seate of the *Matrix* to the backe, contaynyng together the *Matrix* or wombe, and afterwarde with the pannicle of the other side, constituting the seconde cote of the *Matrix*.

P This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshie fibres or thinne skynnes, constituting the ryghte *Muscle* of the *Matrix* or wombe.

Q With these characters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and lyke to that pannicle, whiche the foresayd **O** did poynt to us.

R The former part of the necke of the *Matrix*, couered as yet, betwene **R** and **S** with that cote whiche

whiche the partes of *Peritonium* offer vnto it, whiche byng forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knitte it to *Peritonium*: but the space beyng betwene *Kands* doth shewe the largenes of the necke of the *Matrix*. And the wrynkes which are seene here, are they whiche the necke of the *Matrix* fallng into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shewe in the cutting.

F The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefly seene, for we haue so caste our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hinder seate of the bladder, whiche loketh towarde the *Matrix*.

For yf ye wyll suppose and ymagine this body of a woman, to be set vpryght as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwise then the thing is, that the bottome of the *Matrix* is set forth muche higher then the bladder.

V This is a portion of the nauell, deliuered in the cutting from *Peritonium*, and tourned ouer together with the vesselles seruyng properly to the chyld.

X A portion of a bayne goyng from the Nauell to the *Lyu*er.

r A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder pertaynyng vnto the Nauell, and bynging from thence the brine of the chyld, betwene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Shewe

The first booke.

Let & Shewe two arteries creping forth hyther from the Nauell, by the sides of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the braunches of the great artyre, going principally to the holes of the bones about the priuie members.

¶ The declaration of the seconde figure of the members of women, and of the karacters of the same.



¶ We haue here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates might as nigh as may be, be set before the eyes, and afterwarde we haue cut away the ventricle with the bowels, & also *Mesenterium* and the splene, leauyng the strapte entrayle in this place vnmedled with, as well as we dyd in the figure before. And mozeouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermoste cote whiche *Peritonium* gaue vnto it, cuttyng away also all the pannicles, that the vesselles carryng forth the substance and matter of seede to the stones, & also the vessels carryng away the seede from thence to the Matrix shoulde appeare and be seene. Also we haue tourned ouer the bladder downewarde on the lefte syde, lyke wyse breaking

breakyng the way or conduite whiche beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder should not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones aboue the priuie members, that the neckes of the matrix and of the bladder might the more commodiously be seene.

A Waynes running forth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skinne, whiche is brought ouer the heyght of the shoulder.

B Waynes springing from those baynes whiche are led forth by the arme hole to the hande.

C The principall body of the teate.

D D Kernels and fatnesse sprede abrode euery where on the karnelly body, marked with **C**.

E F G H The hynder outsyde or insyde of the former seate of *Peritonium* outwarde. For the former region of *Peritonium* is here bowed vpwarde and downewarde towarde the syde.

I K Portions of Waynes and also Artires, creppng forth downewarde, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L The gybolite or swellng seate of the lyuer.

M The holowe part of the lyuer is here also somewhat seene.

N A small portion or peece of the wayne goyng from the Hauell to the Liuer.

O The stocke of *Vena porta* is here cut away, with
the

The first booke.

- the vesselles brought vnto it.
- P** The holowe bayne.
- Q** The great Artyze.
- R** The rootes of the Artyzes goyng to the ventricule, the lyuer, the splene, the caule, and to the bowelles.
- s** The beginning of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.
- T** The bayne and Artyze whiche bryngeth the whayishe humour to the ryght kydney.
- V** The bayne and Artyze whiche bringeth the whayishe humour to the left kydney.
- X** The begynnyng of a bayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.
- Y** The former seate of the ryght kydney.
- z** The former seate of the left kydney.
- a** The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kydney, into the bladder, but at the nethermour, is broken away, but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder marked with *b*.
- b** The way that carryeth forth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.
- c** The way that carryeth forth the brine from the left kydney into the bladder.
- d** The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnyng the hygher *d* doth shewe.
- e** The seede bayne goyng to the left testicle.
- f** The springing forth of the Artires of seede.
- g** The ryght seede Artire.
- h** The left seede Artire.
- ik** The former part of the bottome of the Matrix,

trix, and i the weth the right blunte angle or corner of the sayde bottome, where k the weth the left, but l the weth the region or place of the Matrix, where the mouth of his bottom consisteth, and where his necke beginneth.

m This is the strayte gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the Characters but on the one side only.

n A portion of the Wayne and Artyze of seede, whiche do go to the upper seate of the bottome of the wombe.

o Portions of the Waynes and Artyze of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioynyng and goyng together, and constituting.

p A body lyke the spire of a steple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote or foundation of this body, whereas the saide roote or foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q From that saide body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, committing and ioynyng the testicle to Peritonium.

r The former face or part of the testicle.

s The begynnyng of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

t The bowyng and turnynges ouer agayne of the vessell which beareth forth the seede, whiche turnynges the sayde vessell maketh rounde about the sydes of the testicle.

u The goyng forth of the vessell whiche carryeth forth the seede of the Matrix.

The first booke.

- xx The necke of the Matrix.
- y Vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.
- z A bayne commyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karakter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the vrine.
- μβ The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.
- γ The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.
- δ In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.
- ε Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or opening of the wombe or Matrix, and the small hyllockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, nede here no speciall declaration with Characters.
- ι The roote of the Artire, goyng into the lowest part of *Mesenterium*.
- α Vessels which do ascende and rise bpwarde to the Muskles of the *Abdomen*, from the Vaines and Artires whiche do go into the legge.

¶ The declaration of the Characters of the thirde figure of women.

This present figure sheweth the Matrix or wombe, with the thynne couerynges whiche do bynde it to *Perispermium*, cut forth from the body, and the

the necke therof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or openyng of the bottome of the Matrix doth here manyfestlye shewe it selfe. And we haue lyke wyse so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownes of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manyfestlye sene.

A The former face of the bottome of the Matrix, beyng not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

B B The necke of the Matrix.

C A parte of the bottome of the Matrix, swelling foorth into the vpper seate of the necke of the Matrix, in maner of a karnell.

D The mouth of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE A pannicle knittynge the Matrix to *Peritonium*, and conteynyng his vesselles.

F The left testicle of the Matrix.

G The bayne and artire of seede.

H Portion of the seede bayne and artire, commynge to the vpper seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I A portion of the seede bayne and Artire commynge to the testicle.

K The vessell carryng the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

L The holownes of the bladder.

M The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N Here hangeth foorth a lyttle peece of the wayes of the brine.

The first Booke.

The declaration of the Characters of the
fourth Table of Women.

Small braunches running
foorth into the pannicle where
they are committed and ioyned
to *Peritonium*.

A portion of the wayne and
Artire goyng into the testicle,
falling to the bypper seat of the bottome of the
Matrix.

The commixtion and goyng together of the
seede bayne and artyre, that is lyke the spire of
a steple, which we lyken to the braded baynes
called *Varices*.

The left testycle.

The vessell carryng foorth the seede from
the testycle into the Matrix.

The blunte angle or corner of the bottome of
the Matrix, in whom the vessell that bryngeth
foorth the seede attempteth his insertion.

In this seate the bottome of the Matrix is
ended into the necke therof, and in this region
or place is the begynnynge of the mouth or ope-
nyng place therof.

The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

Here the necke of the blader is brought forth
into the necke of the Matrix, and there endeth.

Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of
the bottome of the Matrix, and also his necke.

The swellng bymmes at the mouth of the
necke of the Matrix.

vv The wayes that bynge the brine from the raynes in the bladder.

The declaration of the Characters of the. v. bf. vii. and. viii. figures.



We have now deuised this fyfth table of the wombe oz Matrix, conteynnge a male chylde, on the former syde, with a long section oz cut, and another whiche are ouer tywart slytte, remouyng and takyng awaye into the sydes,

partes of the coates of the bottome of the Matrix, yea, euen from the vttermost infolder of the chylde.

abcd The inner syde of the sayde infolder of the Matrix, whiche before the section was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chylde.

EE The vtter syde of the Matrix, and the hygher E noteth the top oz the ryght angle oz corner of the Matrix, brought foorth bywarde and toward the ryght syde, more then toward the left, because it is a man chylde which is in y^e wombe.

F The fyfte oz the vttermost infolder of the chylde.

GG The seconde infolder of the chylde is here

The first Booke.

also a great part sene.

H A part of the necke of the Matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a bayne and an Artire, which is princypally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I Here is also yet left the ryght testicle, that the situacion of it myght be sene and perceaued in women beyng with chylde.

E The syrte Table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the Matrix, and not broken.

K **T**he vttermoste infolder of the chylde.

L **L** The secōd infolder of the chylde which forsomuch as it is transparent in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde, be wrapt within this third infolder, in it somewhat to be sene.

In the seuenth table we haue deuided the vtter and the second infolder of the chylde, with a longe section or cutte, and we haue here expressed and shewed foorth both the sayde infolders, taken away from the third infolder, and the thyrde infolder also yet whole.

M **M** The thyrde or the inmoste infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one may easely see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N The

N The proceadyng or order of Waynes and Ar-
tures, goyng to the Nauyll from the first infol-
der of the chylde.

O P O P The seconde infolder of the chylde.

And **O O** shewe his insyde, where **P P** sheweth
his vtter syde.

Q R The fyrste infolder of the chylde, where **Q**
noteth the outsyde, and **R** the insyde, but the
proceadyng and order of the vesselles by the se-
conde and the thyrde infolder are perfectly
known, without any helpe of Characters.



And the eyght Table expresseth the
chylde delyuered from all his coates,
and so it sheweth hym lying, by the
wonderfull prouidence of nature,
not as the common opinion of the
bulger sorte of wyters affirmeth, but as you
may here se in these figures, & so doth it lye in
the middest of the wombe. For it is most vntue
that the chylde doth lye in the wombe rounde,
lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees should
touche to the face, but as he is set here in the
viii. figure. And obseruyng this true situacion
of hym, you shall fynd commonly none other si-
tuacion of the chylde, nor ioynyng of any ioynt
of hym therin, then is here expressed.

But in this figure **MMN O P O P Q R** do
note the same as in the seuenth Table, saue
that **M & M** do shewe the insyde, or inner parte
of the thyrde infolder. But **S** sheweth here pri-
uately the goyng forth of the vesselles of the
Nauyll

The first Booke.

Naupll, which is betwene the Naupll and the ioyning together of the vessels with the thirde infolder, which is also brought forth with a greate space betwene the shewyng, where bee certayne (as it were) knottes or swellinges, accordyng to the numbze of the whiche knottes more or lesse, Hydwyues folyshele do prophesie eyther many or fewe chyldzen to the woman, which of the learned men is taken but for a very fantasye, and worthy of reprehention. And moreouer when the chylde commeth forth (as it chaunseth sometymes) hauynge that about his necke, they saye that it is the same childes destenye to be hanged, with many other foolyshe conceytes, rather to be laughed at, then to be beleued.

The declaration of the Characters of the nynt figure of women.



AD the nynt figure sheweth the Matrix cut forth of the bodye, beyng of that bygnesse as it was seene taken forth of a woman at the lasse Anothomye, which I did se at the vniuersitie of Padua in Italy. And moreouer we haue so deuyded and cutte asunder the bottome of the Matrix by the myddle, that the concauitie and hollowe bought within the same myght be perceaued, and the thicke substaunce also of both the coates of the Matrix in women, when they

they be not with chylde.

A A B B The concauitie and holowe bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

C D A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latyn *Scortum*, whiche doth belonge to the place wherein the testycle doth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat foorth into the bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

E E The thicknes of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the Matrix.

F F A portion of the innermoze bottome of the Matrix, swelling foorth downward from the hygher seate of the Matrix, into the holownes and bought of the bottome.

G G The beginnyng of the necke or the opening place of the bottome of the Matrix.

H H The seconde or vttermoze infolder of the bottome of the Matrix, descended frō *Peritonium*.

I I Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from *Peritonium*, and conteynyng the Matrix.

K Here is also sene the substauce of the necke of the Matrix, because the cuttyng wherwith we deuyded the bottome of the Matrix, was begunne at this place.

L A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the Matrix, castynge foorth into it the brine. The swelling partes of *Abdomen* and whatsoeuer is els to be considered thereof, they may be sufficiently knowen without derrection of Characters.

FINIS.

The second Booke.

Of the tyme of byrth. And which is called
naturall or vnnaturall.

Cap. i.

In the first Booke We haue
sufficientlye set foorth and
described the maner, situa-
tion, & forme of the Ma-
trix wherein man is con-
ceaued, With diuers other matters ap-
pendyng and concernyng the better vn-
derstandyng of the same. And nowe
here in this seconde Booke We Wyl de-
clare the maner of the quytynge and de-
liueraunce of the Infant out of the mo-
thers wombe, With other thinges ther-
to appertaynyng. And first here in this
Chapter We Wyl declare the tokens and
signes whereby ye may perceiue whe-
ther the tyme of labour be neare or not:
For when the houre of labour appro-
cheth neare, these signes folowing euer-
more proceade and come befoze.

First certaine dolours and paines be-
gyn to growe about the guttes, the na-
uyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and
lyke

Tokens to
know when
the tyme of
delyueraunce
is nere.

lykeWyle about the thighes, and the other places beyng neare to the priuie partes, which lykeWyle then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is nere.

But ye shall note that there is two maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashion.

Two sortes
of deliue-
raunce.

The due season is most commonly after the ninth moneth, or about fortie wekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eyght moneth, other they be dead before the birth or els liue not long after.

2. 7. lib. 2. 2.

deliuered

deliuered

deliuered

deliuered

The due fashion of birth is this: first the head commeth forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body toward the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde, beyng towardes the face and

The due
fashion of
byrth.

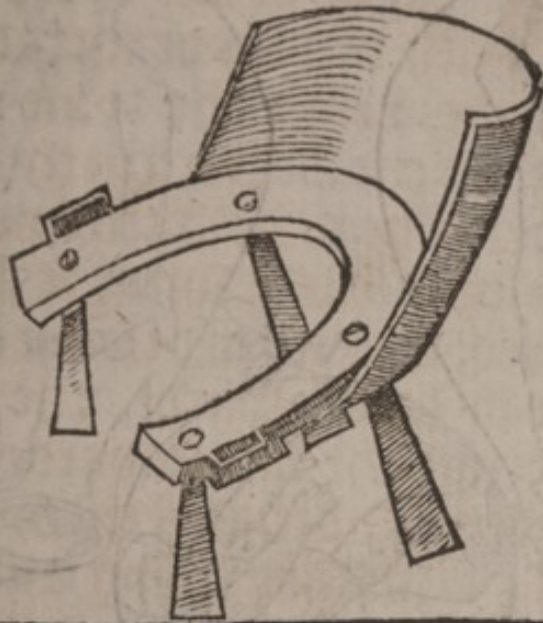
and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrst of the byrth figures. For as hath ben sayde already in the fyrst booke, before the tyme of deliuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head vpwward, and the feete downewarde, but when it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrary, the head downewarde, the feete vpwward, and the face towardes the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the deliuerance is easie without long taryng or looking for it.

Of byrth
not naturall.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is deliuered before her tyme, or out of due season, or after any other fashion then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges proceade first, or one alone, with both the handes vpw, or both downe, other els the one vpw and the other downe, and diuers otherwise, as shalbe hereafter more clearely declared.

Of

THE BIRTH FYGVRES
THE WOMANS STOOLE
THE



II



I



THE BYRTHE

III



IIII



V



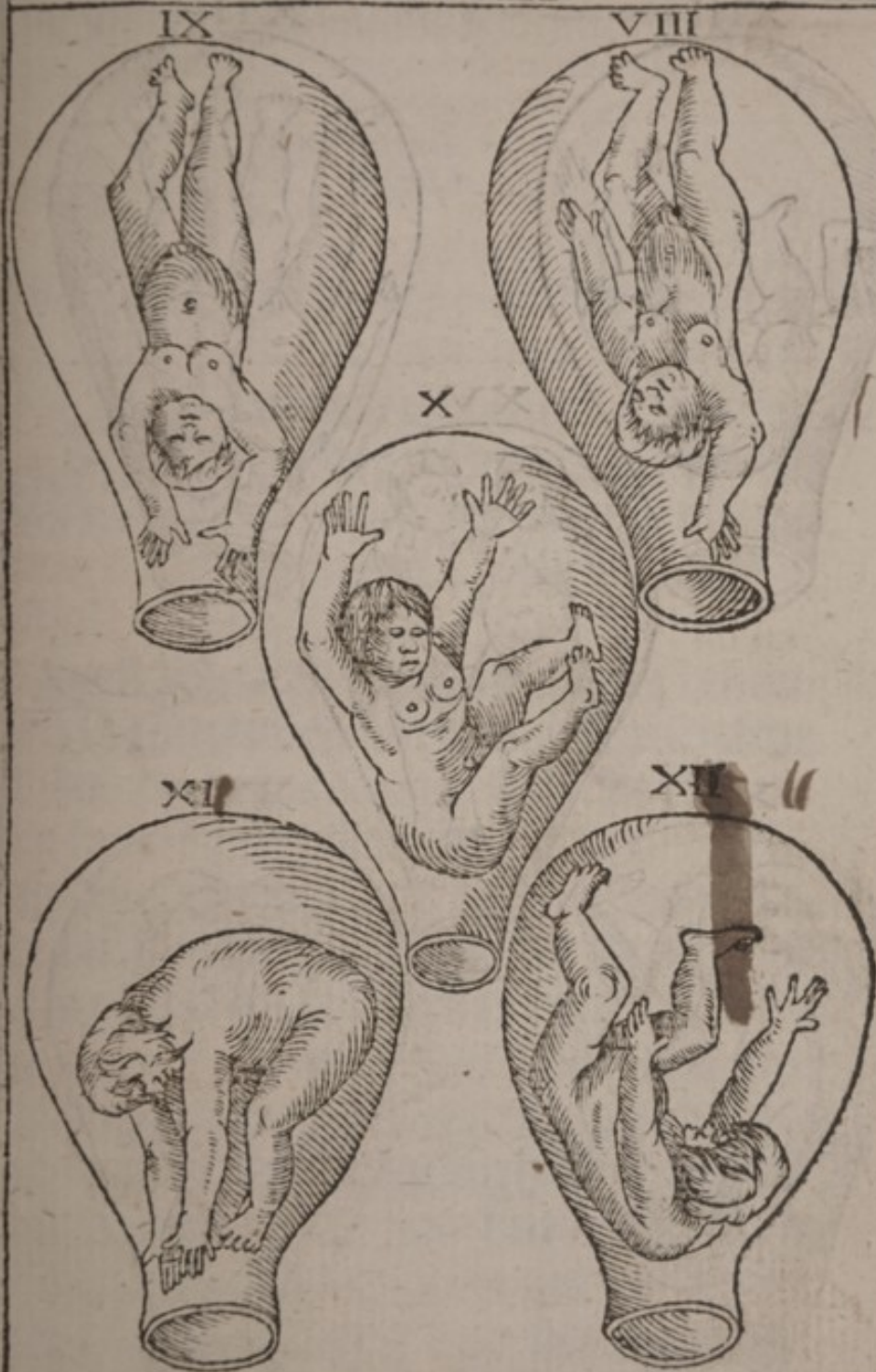
VI



VII



FIGVRES



THE BYRTHE FYGVRES

XIII

XIII



XV



XVI



XVII



Of easie and breasie, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, and the causes of it:

With the signes howe to knowe
and foze see the same.

Capit. ii.

Very many be the perilles, daungers and thronges, which chaunce to women in theyr labour, whiche also ensue and come in diuers wayes, and for dyuers causes, suche as I shall here declare.

Many perils
chauncing to
women in
their labour.

Fyrst when the woman that labourereth is conceyued ouer yonge, as before xii. or. xv. yeres of age (whiche chaunceth sometyme, though not very often) and that the passage be ouer anguste, streate, or narrowe, other naturally, or els for some disease and infirmitie, whiche may happen about that part, as apostumes, pulshes, pyles, or blysters, and such other. Through the whiche causes, nature can not (but with great dolour and payne) open and dilate it selfe, to the expelling and deliuerance
of

The seconde booke.

of the chyld. And sometime the vesike
oz bladder, oz other intrayles beyng a-
bout the Matrix oz Wombe, be also a-
postumate and blystered, whiche being
greeued, the Matrix oz Wombe likewise
for vicinitie and neighbourhead is gre-
ued with them, & that hindereth great-
lye the deliuerance. Also sometime in
the fundement are hemorrhodes oz pil-
les and other pushes, chappynge oz
chynes, whiche cause great payne. Also
hardnesse and difficultie oz byndyng of
the belly, which thinges for the grieffe
and payne that ensueth of them, cau-
seth the woman to haue little power to
helpe her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, yf the partie be weake
and of feble complexion, oz of nature ve-
ry colde, oz to yonge, oz very aged, oz ex-
ceedyng grosse and fatte, oz contrary-
wise, too spare and leane, oz that she ne-
uer had childe before, oz that she be ouer-
timorous and fearefull, dyuers, Way-
warde, oz such one that wyll not be ru-
led, remouyng her selfe from one place
to

to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche more paynefull, cruell and dolorous, then it woulde otherwise be. Also ye muste vnderstande that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

*Conting
according
to nature*

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and greater growth, then that it may easily passe that narrow passage, or contrarywise, if it be so faynt, weake and tender, that it cannot turne it selfe, or doth it very slowly, or yf the woman haue two chylde at once, other els that it with the whiche she laboureth, be a monster, as for example, yf it hath but one body & two heades, as appeareth in the .xvii. of the birth figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, when it proceadeth not in due tyme, or after due fashion, as when it commeth forth with both feete or both knees together, or els with one foote onlpe, or with both feete downe-wardes, and both handes vpwardes, other els (the whiche is most perillous)

K 1

sidelong,

Isidelong, arselong, or backlong, other
 els (having two at a byrth) both pro-
 ceade with theyr feete fyrst, or one with
 his feete, and the other with his head,
 by thole and dyuers other wayes the
 woman sustayneth great dolour, paine,
 and anguyshe.

Item, yf the woman suffer aborle-
 ment, that is to saye, byrnyng forth her
 chylde in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the
 conception, whiche is before the due
 tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne
 to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the
 porte of the wombe is so firmly and
 strongly enclosed, that vnneth the point
 of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the chylde be dead in the Mothers
 belly, it is a very perillous thing, for so
 much as it cannot be easely turned, ney-
 ther can it welde or helpe it selfe to come
 forth, or if the chylde be sicke or weakened
 so that it canot for feblenes helpe it self.

To knowe
 whether the
 chylde be
 dead in the
 mothers bel-
 lye.

The which thing may be foresene and
 knowen by these tokens: If the woman
 with chylde haue ben long sicke before
 her

her labour, if she haue ben soze lasked, if after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwoutly her flowres, yf straight after one moneth vpon the conception, her brestes yelde any milke, if the childe stirre not ne moue at suche tyme as is conuenient for it, these be arguementes and tokens that it shuld be very weake. By what tokens ye shall knowe it is dead, I shall shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great peril in labouring, when the secondine or latter birth is ouer fyne or stronge, and will not soone riue or breake a sunder, so that the child may haue his easie coming forth. And contrary wyle, when it is ouer weake, slender or thin, so that it breaketh a sunder before that the chylde be turned, or apt to issue forth, for then the humours whiche are collect & gathered together, about this secondine or seconde byrth, passe away soner then they shoulde do, & the birth shal lack his due humidities and moistures, which shuld cause it the easelyer to proceade, & with lesse payne.

Perill in the
secondine.

Excesse of
heate or cold
greatlye
hyndereth
the labour.

The byrth also is hyndered by ouer-
muche colde, or ouermuche heate, for in
ouermuche colde, the passage and all o-
ther powers of the labouring woman,
be coarcted and made narrower then
they woulde otherwyle be. Likewise
ouer much heate debiliteth, weakeneth
and faynteth both the woman and the
chylde, so that neyther of them in that
case, can wel welde or helpe them selues
for fayntnes.

And farther if the woman haue vsed
to eate comonly such meate or frutes
which do exiccate or dry, and constraine
or bynde, as Medlars, Chestnuts, and
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-
peres, Quinces, and suche other, with
ouer muche vse of Uergens, and suche
lyke sowre sauces, with Rife, Mill, and
many other thinges, al this shall great-
lye hinder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the
fifth moneth folowing the conception,
or to bathe in such water where Alome
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges
which

Whiche do coarcte and constrayne, or yf she haue ben oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at ease, or yf she haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurstie, or haue vsed ouer much Watche and Walkyng, epyther if she vsed a litle before her labour thynges of great odour, sinell or sauour, for suche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe vppward the Mother or Matrix, the which is great hynderaunce to the byrth.

Also yf the woman feele payne only in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a signe of harde labour, lyke wise if she were wont in times passed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great labour alwayes in the birth.

Nowe signes and tokens of an expedite and easy deliuerance, be such as be contrary to all those that haue ben rehearsed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes passed, easly to be deliuered, and that in her labour she feele but litle thronng

Tokens of
easy deliue-
raunce.

or dolour, or though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the nether partes or bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all paynefull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good speede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, much stirring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paynes tomblyng in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and myghtie of nature, such as can wel and strongly helpe her self to the deliuerance of the birth. And againe, euyl signes be those, when she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer sore, and that she her selfe in the labouring faint and sowne, these be vnluckie and mortall signes.

¶ How a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe,
and what remedies be for them
that haue harde labour.

Capit. iii.

TO succoure and helpe them that are in such difficult peryl of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye must obserue, kepe and marke those thinges that we shall (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowynge.

First the woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must exchue & forbear al such occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng which cannot be auoyded, forsomuch as it commeth by nature, or by long continuance and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, mollifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder the birth so much the lesse.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatio

Howe the labour may be made more easy.

chance about the Mother or the priuie part, or about the vesike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and suche lyke, the Whiche thynge maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible paynt, the partie can be delyuered or discharged. In these cases it behoueth such thinges to be looked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some expert Surgion.

Also yf the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse the moneth before her labour suche thynge the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples fryed with suger, taken fastyng in the mornyng, and after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tempred with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples. Also to eatte fygges in the mornyng fastyng, and at nyght, loseth well the bellye. If these profite not, *Cassia fistula* taken iii. or.iiii. dramis one halfe houre before dyner, shal lose the belly without peryl.

Agayne

Agayne, in this case she must refraine from all such thinges as do harden, re-
strayne, and constipat, as meates broy-
led or roasted, and ryce, hard egges, biefe,
chestnutttes, and all sowre frutes, and
such lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she
may receave a clyster, but it must be ve-
ry gentle and easye, made of a pynt of
the broth of a chicken or other tender
fleshe, thereto puttyng so muche course
suger or hony, as may make it reasona-
bly sweete, & halfe a sponefull of whyte
salt. Or for the pooze woman maye be
made a clyster of a pynt of water, wher-
in hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke,
with hony and salt, as before. She may
vse also some other easy and temperate
purgation, to mollifie & lose her with-
all, as Mercury sodden with flesch in po-
tage, and diuers such other, or els a sup-
positer tempered with sope, larde, or the
yolkes of egges.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour
drawing neare) she waxe faynt or sicke-
lye,

Thynge to
lose the belly.

Wherewith
to comforte
the woman
in her labour

The second Booke.

Iye, then must ye comfort her With good comfortable meate, drinke, holosome and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynges the Whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such things the Which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth may the more frely proceade, and that chiefly in the yonger Women. The elder Women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thynges, which haue propertie to lenifie and soyle, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outward fomentations, bathynges, suppositories, and annoyntmentes.

Annoyntmentes
to soule.

Annoyntmentes Wherewith ye maye soyle the priuie place, be these. Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Olive, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscolite of hollyoke, and such other, & for drynke, let her vse good rype Wine mixed With Water, also there

there muste be a consideration in the
 dieting of the woman, that she maye
 vse such thynges the which may moy-
 sten her, and not make her fatte. Con-
 trarywise, let her auoyde such thynges
 the which shoulde exicate, drye, con-
 strayne, or coarct her, and that all the
 moneth before her labour. But about
 ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele a-
 ny payne or grieffe) lette her vse every
 day to washe or bathe her with warme
 water, in the which also that she tarpe
 not ouerlong in bathyng for weakning
 of her, and therein let her stande, so that
 the water come aboue the nauyll a lit-
 tle, and also seathe in the water Ma-
 lowes, Holyoke, Camomell, Mercurie,
 Maydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke
 seede, and suche other thynges which
 haue vertue to mollifie and sofle. And
 yf it be so, that for weakenesse of the bo-
 dy she may not endure this bathyng in
 warme water, then with a spounge
 or other cloth dppped in the foresayde
 bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete,
 her

Bathes to
 lose and gen-
 tlyly to open
 the body.

Impugnans
 aliquid est

aliquid
 est

The second Booke.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the
Whiche thynges shall greatly profite to
her. But in suche tyme beware ye come
not in the common hot houses, for they
would cause you to be feeble and faynt,
which were yll in this case.

And when ye are thus bathed or wa-
shed, then shall it be very conuenient for
you to annoynt with the foresayde gre-
ces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyll,
sydes, and suche places as are neare to
the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shall
be greatlpe profitable for her to conuey
inwarde into the priuie part these fore-
said oyles or greces with a sponge, or o-
ther thyng made for the purpose, she ly-
ing vpryght, the myddes of her bodye
most hyst, so that it maye the better re-
mayne within her, and that chieflpe yf
the Matrix be drie, other els the partie
very leane and spare.

Sweete
sumes.

It shall be also very profitable for her to
suffume the nether places with Muske,
Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on
embres, yelde a goodlpe sauour, by the
which

Whiche the neather places open them-
selfe, and drawe downewarde.

Also as I sayde before, she must take
good hede to her diet, that she take thin-
ges the which may comfort and streng-
then the body, feeding not ouermuch of
any thing, and to drinke pleasaunt and
well sauering wine, or other drinke, also
moderatly to exercise the body in doing
some thynge, styring, mouyng, goyng,
or standyng, more then otherwyle she
was wont to do, these thinges farther
the byrth and make it the easier, and
this is the maner of diet the which we
aduise the woman to kepe the moneth
before her labour or longer.

Another dyet there is, the which she
ought to obserue in the tyme of labour,
when the stormes and thronges begyn
to come on, and the humours which yet
hitherto haue remained about the Ma-
trix or Mother collected, nowe beginne
to flowe forth, and this maner of dyet
consisteth in two sortes. First that such

Which

That is to
be done whe
the time of la-
bour is come

Whiche may cause the byrth or labour to be verye easie. Secondly, to withstand, defende and to put away so neare as may be the instant and present dolours. And as touchyng this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit still, then (rising againe) to go vp and downe a payre of stayres, cryyng or reachyng so loude as she can, so to styre her selfe.

And also it shalbe verye good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that thoroowe that meanes the guttes and intrayles be thrust together and depressed downewarde. Also it shalbe very good to receyue some medicine to prouoke the byrth, of the whiche we wyll speake more hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceyueth the Matrix or Mother to waxe laxe or loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours yssue forth in great plentie, then shal it be meete for her to sit downe leanyng backwarde in maner byright.

Of the Midwifes Schoole.

For the which purpose in some regions

(as

(as in Fraunce and Germany) the Mid-
Wifes haue stoles for the nonce, whiche
beyng but lowe, and not hye from the
grounde, be made so compassewise and
cane or holowe in the middes, that that
may be receyued from vnderneath whi-
che is looked for, and the backe of the
stole leanyng backwarde, receyueth the
backe of the woman, the fashion of the
whiche stoole, is set in the beginning of
the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the tyme of labour is
come, in the same stoole ought to be put
many clothes or cloutes in the backe of
it, the which the Midwife may remoue
from one side to another accordyng as
necessitie shall require. The Midwife
her selfe shall sit before the labouryng
woman, and shall diligentlly obserue
and wayte, howe much, and after what
meanes the chylde styreth it selfe, also
shall with her, handes fyrst annoyn-
ted with the Oyle of Almondes, or
the Oyle of whyte Lillies, rule and dy-
rect euery thyng as shall seeme best.

Also

The seconde booke.

The Mid-
wyfe must
geue comfo-
table wordes
to the partie
traucling.

Also the Midwyfe muste enstruct and comfort the partie, not onlye refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with sweete wordes, geuyng her good hope of a speedefull deliuerance, encouraging and enstomakyng her to patience and tollerance, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as she may, also strekyng gentilly with her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downewarde.

But and if the woman be any thing grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lie groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downewarde, annointing also the priuie partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Midwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straighthes, (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe well to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Midwife aboue
all

all thinges take heede of that she com-
pel not the woman to labour before the
byrth come forward, and she we it selfe.

For before that tyme, all labour is in
vayne, labour as much as ye liste. And
in this case many times it commeth to
passe, that the partie hath laboured so
fore before the time, that when she shuld
labour in deede, her might and strenght
is spente before in vayne, so that she is
not now able to helpe her selfe, and that
is a perillous case.

Furthermore when the Secondine
or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth
is wrapped and conteyned) doth once
appeare, then maye ye knowe that the
labour is at hand, wherfore if the same
secondine breake not of his owne kinde,
it shalbe the Midwyfes part and office,
with her nayles easely and gentelly to
breake and rent it, or yf that maye not
conueniently be done, then rayse vp be-
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut
it of with a payre of sheeres, or sharpe
knife, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

L 1

With

*15 before the
2nd stop.*

To labour
much before
the due time
doth but fee-
ble the wo-
man, and no
thing profit.

*goverment of
the
palete*

*of the
of the
of the
of the*

The seconde booke.

With the cut. This done, by and by ensueth consequently the flux and flowe of humours, of the whiche I spake before, and then next foloweth immediatly the byrth.

But yf it so chaunce that the Secundine should be cut by the Midwyfe, and all the watery part issued and spent before due tyme & necessitie should require it, so that the priuie passage be lefte exicate and dry, the byrth not yet appearing, and by this meanes the labour shoulde be hyndered and letted. In this case ye shall annoynt and mollifie that priuie passage with the oyle of Whyte Lillies, or some of the greses spoken of before, fyrst warmed, and so conueyed into the priuie partes, the whiche thinges wyll cause the way to be slippery, souple, and easie for the byrth to passe. But chiefly in these difficulties, should profite, the whyte of an egge together with the yolke powred into the same place, whiche should cause it to be most slippery and slydyng, and supplye the

rowme

12

Early supple
of membranes
a cause of
delay

Made for
suppleing membranes
when fruits are
dry from
Early supple
membranes

volume of the naturall humidities spent before.

And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the commynge forth, then muste the Mydwyfe helpe all that she may, With her hande fyrst annoynted With some oyle, openyng and enlargyng the way, that the yssue may be the freer. Likewise must be done yf she beare two chyldren at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, when that fyrst procedeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordynately, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowynge.

But when the byrth commeth not naturally, then must the Mydwyfe do all her diligence and payne (if it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye With her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaunceth the chyld to come the legges & both armes & handes downeward, close to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth

The head
procedyng
fyrst.

The legges
& both hands
downe, pro-
cedyng first.

The seconde booke.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Midwyfe must do all her payne with tender handlyng and annoynting to receyue forth the chylde, the legges being still close together, and the handes likewise remayning, as appeareth in the sayde seconde figure.

Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Midwyfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst forth, vppwardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downewardes by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturally agayne and without perill myght it proceade and come forth as the fyrst.

*May like
partic
Verum*

The thirde
of the byrth
figures.

iii. Agayne somtyme the byrth cometh forth with both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lyfted vpp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perillouste maner of byrth that is, as appeareth in the third of the birth figures. And here must the Midwyfe do what she may to turne the byrth (if it may be possible)

possible) to the first figure, and if it Wyl not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the second figure. But if this also Wyl not be, then receyue the feete as they come forth, and bynde them With some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the birth tyll al be come forth, and this is very ieoperdous labour.

iiii. Also sometyme the byrth cometh forwarde With one foote only, the other being left bywarde, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouryng Woman to lay her vpryght vppon her backe, holdyng by her thyghes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her body, then let the Midwyfe With her hande returne in agayne the foote that cometh out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the Woman that laboureth to styre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styryng, the byrth maye be turned the head downeward, and so

*because
the arms
the
the
also the
head.*

The fourth figure.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the woman in the stoole agayne, and to do as ye dyd in the fyrste figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstanding the mothers styrryng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Midwyfe with her hande softlye fetche out the other legge whiche remainned behynde, euermore takyng heede of this, that by handelyng of the chylde, she do not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hanging downewarde toward the feete.

The fyfth figure.

*Might
abscum
and all left h.
the midwyfe*

The sixth figure.

v. Lyke wyse sometyme it com meth to passe, that the side of the chylde com meth forwarde, as appeareth in the. v. figure, and then must the Midwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his naturall fassion, and so to come forth.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde com meth foorth the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abroad, as in the. vi. figure, and then must the Midwyfe see, that the feete and legges maye be ioyned together, and so to proceade and come forth, euer.

euermore regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees or both forwarde, as in the .vii. figure, then muste the Midwyfe put by the birth, tyl such time as the legges & feete come ryght forth, & then to do as afore.

The scuenth figure.

viii. When the chyld cometh headlong, one of the handes comyng out and appearyng before, as in the .viii. figure, then let the birth proceade no farther, but let the Midwyfe put in her hande, and tenderlye by the shoulders thruste in the byrth agayne, so that the hand may be resettled in his place, and the byrth to come forth ordynately and naturally, as in the first figure: But yf by this meanes the hande come not to his conuenient place, then let the woman lye vpryght with her thighes and belly vpwordes, and her head downewordes, so that by that meanes it may be brought to passe, and then bryng her to her seate agayne.

The eyght figure.

Hand & head.

ix. But yf it proceade with bothe handes

The nynt figure.

The second Booke.

handes forwarde, then muste ye lyke
wise do as afoze, by the shoulders thru-
styng it backe agayne, vntyll such time
as the hands lye close to the sides, & so to
come forth, as apeareth in the .ix. figure

The .x. figure

*Præchor
Vulva presentat*

x. But when it commeth arward
as in the .x. figure maye be seene, then
must the Mydwyfe with her handes re-
turne it agayne, vntyll such tyme that
the birth be turned, the legges and feete
forwarde, other els, yf it maye be so, it
were best that the head might come for-
warde, and so naturally to proceade.

The tenth
figure.

?
*Cephalic
Version*

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and
come forth first with the shoulders, as
in the .xi. figure, then must ye fayze and
softlye thruste it backe agayne by the
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head
come forwarde.

The twelfth
figure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth
foorth with both the handes and both
the feete at once, as in the .xii. figure,
then must the Mydwyfe tenderly take
the chylde by the head, and returne the
legges vpwarde, & so to receiue it forth.

xiii. And

xiii. And when it cometh brestward as in the .xiii. figure, the legges & handes bydyng behynde, then let the Midwyfe take it by the feete or by the head, which that shalbe mooste apt and commodious to come forwarde, returnyng the rest vpyward, & so to receiue it forth: but if it may be hedling that shalbe best

The. xiii.
figure.

Podali apodii
Cuphalu
Paruini

xiiii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth the woman to haue two at a burthen, & that both proceade together headlong, as in the .xiiii. figure, and then must the Midwyfe receyue the one after the other, but so, that she let not slyppe the one, whylest she taketh the first.

The. xiiii.
figure.

xv. If both come forth at once with theyr feete forward, then must the Midwyfe be very diligent to receiue first the one, and then the other, as hath ben shewed before.

The. xv.
figure.

Very alert

xvi. When the one cometh headlong, the other fote wyse, then must the Midwyfe helpe the byrth that is mooste nearest the issue, and it that cometh footelong (if she can) to returne it vpon the

The. xvi.
figure.

The second Booke.

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng
euer heede that the one be not noysome
to the other in receyuyng forth of ey-
ther of them.

And to be short, let the Mydwyfe of-
ten tymes annoynt & mollifie the waye
and passage with some of the foresayde
oyntmentes, to make the womans la-
bour so muche the easyer, and haue the
lesse trauayle and payne. And yf there
chaunce to be any Apostume or disease
about those places in this time, by such
annoyntyng to alaye and swage the
payne, so that for the time it may be the
lesse grieffe to the partie, as I spake be-
fore also. And for them that be in this
case, it shalbe best to lye grouelyng, as I
sayde of the grosse, fatte, and fleshy wo-
man.

¶ Remedies and medicines by the which the la-
bour may be made more tollerable, easy,
and without great payne,

Cap. v.

The

The thynges which helpe the birth & make it more easy, are these. First the woman that laboureth must eyther sytte groueling, or els vpright leaning backward, accordyng as it shall seme commodious and necessary to the partie, or as she is accustomed. And in winter or colde weather, the chamber wherin she laboureth must be warmed, but in sommer or hotte wether, let in the ayre to refresh her withall, lest betwene extreme heate and labour, the woman faint and sowne. And furthermore, she must be prouoked to sneesyng, and that eyther with the powder of *Eleborus*, or els of pepper. Also the sides of the woman must be stroken downwarde with the handes, which thyng helpeth greatly and furthereth. And let the Mydwyfe alwaye be very diligent, prouidyng and seing what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoyntyng the priuities with oyle, or other such grece as I spake of before, in this fashion.

Take

Meanes to helpe & prouoke the birth.

Medical
Herbment

Sneezing

hellion
Pepper.

friction

anointing

Re. for annuity. **The second Booke.**

A good mol-
lyfyng oynt-
ment.
oil of white lillies
or Duck grease
Saffron dr.
Musk

Suffiamini galini
Myrh.
Sulfurum
Castor.

Mon. Stone
Myrh.
Madder
Galbanum
Oppoponacum?

Culver. Dung?
Hawks Dung
Oppoponacum.

Rue Juice.
Aristolochia rotunda
Bothor Martis
Ciclamimus
or. Malum terre.
Stauisagre

Helebor.
Oppoponacum

|||?
|||

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes or Duckes grese, & with that temper two graynes waight of Saffron, and one grayne of muske, & there with annoynt the secrete partes. If this pro- fyte nothyng, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrthe, Galbanum, Castorium, lette those be beaten, and make lyke pylles of them, tempe- red together with bulles gail: then take a dram of these pylles, and put it on hoate coales, and let the woman receaue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelowe brymstone, Myrthe, mader, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of eche lyke much, and temper all those together, making of them pylles, and with those also ye maye make fume, to be receaued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer dunge, or of Haw- kes dunge, by puttynge to of Oppoponacum, is soue- raigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in deliuerance.

Also it is very good to dyp woll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conueye into the se- cretes. Also the powder of *Aristolochia rotunda*, or the roote called *Bothor martis*, *Ciclamimus*, or *malum terre*, or the seede of *Stauisagre*, any of these wrap- ped in woll, and conueyed inwarde prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item take *Heleborus*, *Oppoponacum*, and wrappe them together in wooll, and minister them in- warde, for that wyll bryng forth and prouoke the birth, whether it be alyue or dead. Also the rynde

The seconde booke. Fol. lxxviii.

rynde and barke called *Cassia lignea* beaten to powder, and tempered with wyne and dronken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item *Afa fedida*, of the bygnesse and wayght of a pease, myngled together with *Castorium* of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wyne mixt with water, and so dronken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell dronke with wyne, is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of fenigreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayze, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of bleweflowedeluce, a smale quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. Also *Cassia lignea* and *Afa fedida* dronke with wyne, be very good for the same.

Also hollyoke sodden in conduite water and dronken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is very good for her to washe her in the water in the whiche this Hollyoke is decocted and sodden.

Item, certayne pylles the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell or Cinamome and Sauiue, of eche a dram, of *Cassia lignea* a dram and a halfe, of Myrthe, *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Costus amarus*, of eche a dram, of *Scorax liquida* halfe a dram, and of *Oppium* the wayght of .xii. graynes, beate these all together, and fourme them into pylles, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylles with

Colles lignea

℞ wine

℞ iij

(Drink)

Asafetida capensis

℞ Castor ʒi

℞ wine ʒi

(Drink)

Canell ʒi

℞ wine

(Drink)

Roses ʒi

℞ water of fenigreke

℞ Cicercula

℞ Mayden hayze

℞ oyle of bleweflowedeluce

℞ a smale quantitie

(Drink)

Cassia lignea

℞ *Afa fedida*

℞ wine

Hollyoke

℞ conduite water

℞ sodden

℞ washe her in the

water

Pylles

℞ Canell

℞ Cinamome

℞ Sauiue

℞ Myrthe

℞ *Aristolochia rotunda*

℞ *Costus amarus*

℞ *Scorax liquida*

℞ *Oppium*

℞ beat these all together

℞ fourme them into pylles

℞ geue vnto the woman

℞ two drammes of these pylles

℞ with

The seconde booke.

with two ounces of good olde wyne.

Item Saffron and *Syler montanum* prouoketh the byrth of any liuing thing, if it be dzonken: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie should greatly hurt.

Item, take .v. drammes of Sawine, of Rue or herbe grace one dragma and an halfe, of Juniper beryes two drammes, of *Asa fetida*, *Amoniacum*, Madder, of eche two drammes, of these make pylles, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in the whiche is sodden Sawine and Perniriell, or els with the broth of *Cicerula*, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sawine, of *Asa fetida*, *Amoniacum* and Madder, of eche halfe a dram, these temper together in pilles, and geue her with wyne, one dram of the same.

Item, take of *Aristolochia longa*, Pepper, and Myrre, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wyne, and make pylles of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylles be of suche efficacy and strength, that it alleuiateth and bnpayneth the byrth, it deliuereth the Matrix or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it alyue or dead.

Item, take of whyte *Pedellium*, Myrre, and Sawine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with *Cassia lignea*, and Honye, and make pylles of them to the bygnesse of Beason, and of these pylles geue at ech time fiue to the labouryng waman, whiche

Saffron.
Syler montanum
 (Gm)
 Zi q. Upon
 The gentlest dose
 —
 Sarni ziv
 Rue - ziv
 Juniper } ziv
 berries }
 asafetida }
 —
 S amoniacum
 Madder. au ziv
 both made in water
 is saffron see last
 —
 Sarni ziv
 Asafetida
 Amoniacum
 Madder
 au ziv
 Dose ziv.
 —
 Aristolochia longa
 Pepper.
 Myrre
 au part eq
 Make pills
 Dose not
 said
 —
 Pedellium
 Myrre } font. ceij
 Sarni }
 honey
 Cassia lignea 95

The seconde booke. Fol. lxxx.

whiche be of the same might and strength, that the other pilles spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrrh, Castorium, and Storax, of eche one dramme, temper them with Honye, and make pylls of it: these for this purpose excell and passe all other, they be of suche vertue and strength in operation.

Myrrh.
Castor
Storax } ʒss
Choney. ʒss.

C A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wyldc Gowarde, and seeth it in water, in the same water temper Myrrh, the iuyce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thinges together, and make it plaster wyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betwene the Nauyll and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and power to prouoke byrth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all such thinges for breuitie and shortnes, we haue set here onlye a certayne, whose efficacie and power shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

Howe

Retention of the Placenta The seconde booke.

Howe the secondine or seconde byrth
shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not
freely of his owne kynde.

Capit. v.



Ere also sometime it cometh to passe, that the Secondeine whiche is wont to come together with the byrth, remayne and tarry behynde, and folowe not, and that for diuers causes. One is, for because peradventure the woman hath ben so sore weakened and feeblished with trauaile, dolour, and payne of that first byrth, that she hath no strength remaynyng to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the seconde byrth. Another may be, that it be entangled, tyed, or let within the matrix (whiche chaunceth many times) or that it be destitute of humors, so that the water be flowen from it sooner then time is, whiche shoulde make the places more slippery and more easie to passe thorow: Or els that the places ouer weried with long and sore labour,

Inertia

Mulier ad hunc

* "Let us all together
knowe kindred" for

"By heaues Ie make a ghost of
him that lets me"

Hamlet
Shakespeare

for payne contract or gather together, and enclose themselfe agayne, or that the places be swolne for anguise and payne, and so let the commyng forth of the seconde byrth.

But to be short, of Whatsoever cause it be thus stopped, the Mydwyfe in any wyse muste fynde such meanes, that it may be vnloosed and expelled. For otherwise, great inconueniencie shoulde chaunce to the partie, & specially suffocation and choking of the Matrix, which also must so much the more be taken hede to, for because the seconde byrth retained and kept within, wyll soone putrifie and rot, wherof will ensue yll noy some & pestiferous vapours ascendyng to the hart, the braynes, & the midriffe, through the which meanes the woman shalbe short wynded, faynte harted, often soundyng and lying without any maner of mouyng or styrreng in the pulces: yea, and many times is playne-ly suffocated, strangled, and dead of it. Wherefore that none of these thynges

M i

happen,

Irregular
Contracten

Pyæmia

from
retention.

"pestiferous
vapours ascend
to the heart"!

how quaint
how real
1 q. l. 11. 11.
closet
residues
pathology

Retention of
placenta

The seconde booke.

Treatment
Retention of
flowes for
weakenes.

From Inertia

Retention
of placenta
from

From
Inertia
Constriction

happen, with all diligence and payne it muste be prouyded that the secondine be expelled.

If retention of it come by weakenes of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be recomforted and strenghted with good comfortable meates and drinckes whiche may enhart her, as broath made of the yolcke of Egges, or with good olde Wyne, and good fat and tidie fleshe, or Byrdes, Hennes fleshe, Capons, Partridge, Piggins and such like.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contract together agayne, eyther els that the Matric is swollen for long paine, then must be vled such thinges to prouoke it out, the whiche do make the waye slipper, soyle, & easie for it to proceade, with the oyles or ointmentes spoken of before, as oyle of Whyte Lillies, of *Maio ram*, and of blewe Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or *Galbanum* beaten to powder and dronke with luke warmed Wyne, wyll cause the same to yssue

*Reluctum f.
Placenta*

ysſue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Peniri all
ſodden in Wyne, and the decoction dron-
ken, is of the ſame vertue.

Item, to ſuffume the ſecretes With
the perfumes Written of before, is good
for this purpoſe, and the vapour of the
Water in Whiche Hallowes, Holyoke,
and Berefoote be ſodden, receyued be-
neath, is lyke good.

brantford

Alſo to waſhe that partes in Water,
in Whiche is ſodden branne, or to holde
a lyttle baggefull of ſodden branne to
the place, and therewithall to ſoke the
place, is very profitable.

Scutum

But if the retention of the ſecondine
come by reaſon that it is entangled or
faſtened in ſome place of the Matrix, ſo
that it wyll not reſolue ne loole, then
make a fume vnderneath of Brimſtone,
Tute leaues, and Crefſes, or els of Cref-
ſes and ſygges.

*Morbis
adhuc
Placenta*

Alſo of all odoriferous and ſweete
ſmelling thynges, as Ambre, Muſke,
Frankencenſe, Gallia Muſcata, and confec-

The seconde booke.

tion neare, the which sauoures and perfumes put on the embers, muste be so closely receiued vnderneath, that no part of the smell do ascende to the nose of the woman. For to the nose shoulde the saoure of nothing come, but only of such thinges, the which stinke, or haue abhominable smel, as *Asa fetida*, *Castorium*, mans hayre or womans hayre burnt, *Peacockes fethers burnt*. Item, in this case it shalbe very good to make a perfume vnderneath, of the houe of an Ass, which thinges although they be of yll sauour, yet they be of such nature and efficacie, that they occasionate not onely the secundine, but also dead byrthes to proceade and come forth out of the Matrix.

becomynge
And in this case also let the woman holde her breath inwarde so muche as she can, for that shall dryue downwarde suche thynges as be in the body to be expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese with the pouder of Eleborus or Pepper put in the nose, holding her mouth and nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called *Vnguentum Basilicon* conueyed into the Matrix, is very good, for it mollifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the which so sone as it is expelled, infude the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item Rose Water tempered with a quantitie of the powder of Holyoke, and dronke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any part of the secondine do appeare, let the Midwyfe receaue it tenderly, losyng it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and if ye doubt that it wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the whiche she hath handfast, to the womans legge or fote, not very strayte lest it breake, neyther very laxe lest it slip in agayne, and then cause her to sneeze. Nowe yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quickly forwarde, then louse it a little and a little very tenderly, wreathing it from one side to another, tyll such time

M₃

as

Rosewater
powder of
holypoke
(or ash)

not to allow
medicines to
break off

an old
Custom
still retained in
Ireland
1867

Incessing &
Coughing to
be caused as
you see
in handling it
or if it has
been tied to
the leg.

The second Booke.

Which has
been done
in coughs
Furrow
to remove
an adherent
placenta
188

the
Menture
of breawndy

as it be gotten out, but ever beware of
violent and hasty mouing of it, lest that
with the seconde birth ye remove the
Matrrix also.

And yf in this meane whyle the wo-
man faynt or lowne by reason of great
payne ensuyng of the takyng away of
this secondine, then muste ye minister
such thinges to her the which comfort
the head and the hart, as be electuaries
which are confict with Muske, Ambze
and the confection of precious stones,
as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also
suche thynges the which comfort the
stomacke, as Dia galanga, Dia cinamonum, and
such lyke, which are alway in a redy-
nesse at the Apothecaries, the which
also she shall receiue with wine.

Item to remove the secondine, and to
expel it, take Rue, Horehound, Sothern-
Wood, and Motherworthe, of eche lyke
quantitie, and then take so much of the
oyle of Lyllyes, as may be sufficient to
steepe, moysten, and soke the foresayde
hearbes

herbes in, put all this together into
a glased potte couered With suche a co-
uer, that it haue a little hole or vente
aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this
potte ouer the fyre of coales, so that it
boyle a little Whyle, then take it from
the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole Where
the Woman sytteth, made for the nonce,
hauyng a pype made for the purpose,
of the Whiche the one ende ye shall put
into the vente or hole of the couer of the
pot, and the other ende must the partie
receyue into her body, and so to syt clo-
sed rounde about With clothes, that no
vapour or ayre go forth of the potte, ha-
uyng a fewe coles vnder it to kepe it
hotte, and thus sytte the space of an
houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the se-
condine moue or begyn to proceade of
his owne kynde.

And yf it be so that ye profyte not this
Wayes, yet then laye this plaister on
the bellye betwene the nauyll and the
secretes, of the Whiche We shall speake

The second Booke.

hereafter, the which is of such operati-
on and efficacie, that it expelleth dead
birthes. If for al this the second in come
not forwarde, then leaue it, and vse no
more medicines ne remedies to that
purpose, but let it alone, for within few
dayes it wyl putrifie and corrupt, and
dissolue vnto a watery substance, thicke
lyke brine or other fer mixed with wa-
ter, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the
meane whyle it wyl put the woman to
great paine in the head, in the hart, and
in the stomacke, as we touched before.

*As know
that the
placenta
remains
left - and
decompos
the cast
off but
not without
peris*

peristoculis.
Howe that many thynges chaunce to the women
after theyr labour, and howe to auoyde, de-
fende, or to remedie the same.

Cap. vi.

Is also to be vnderstanded
that many tymes after the de-
liueraunce, happeneth to wo-
men other the feuer or ague, or
swellyng, or inflation of the body, other
tumblyng in the belly, or els commoti-
on or settelyng out of order of the Mo-
ther

ther or Matrix. Cause of the Whiche
thynges, is sometimes lacke of due and
sufficient purgation and clensing of the
flowres after the birth, or els contrary-
wyle ouermuche flowyng of the same,
Which sore doth Weaken the Woman.
Also the great labour and styrreng of
the Matrix in the byrth.

Then as oft as it commeth for lacke
of due purgation of the flowres, there
muste be ministred suche thynges the
Which may prouoke the same, whether
it be by medicines taken at the mouth,
or by lotion and washing of the feete, or
by fumes, or odour, or emplastration, or
by decoction of herbes seruyng to that
purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such
other thinges, accordyng as the person
or the peryll doth require, of the Whiche
thinges few or no Women be ignozant.
And ye must take diligent hede that she
be exactly and vtterly purged, to this be
agreable all suche simples the Whiche
prouoke brine, and open the vaynes,
makyng free way for the bloud to passe
and

The second Booke.

and sende the humours and matter
downeward, as Motherwort, Asarum,
Savine, Peniriell, Barcely, Charuyll,
Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper ber-
ries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder,
Valerian, Tyme, Cinamome, Spike-
narde, and such other. Al those thinges
as they do prouoke and cause vrine, so
do they also prouoke & cause the flow-
ers to depart. Howbeit, as neare as ye
can, vse none of these thynges without
the counsaile of an experte Physition,
lest whylest ye helpe one place ye hurte
another. Also to sneese, helpeth muche
to this matter, & to holde in the breath
enclosyng the nose and the mouth. Al-
so fumigation made of the eyes of salte
fyshe, or of the houe of a horse vnder-
neathe, prouoketh the flowres. If ye pro-
fite not by this meanes, then being able
to beare it, let her bloud in the vaine cal-
led *Saphina*, vnder the ancles of the feete,
for this prouoketh flowres chiefly of
all other thynges.

right

Lyke wyle do, yf the woman haue the
ague

ague after her labour, for that cometh
of like cause by retention of the flowres,
and in the feuer let her vse to drinke wa-
ter, in the which is decocte Barley bea-
ten, or Cicer and Barley together, or
Water in Whiche be sodden *Tamarindi*, or
Whay of milke, and let her eate a Cullis
made of a Cocke, and sweete Pomegra-
nates, for these thynge do prouoke the
flowres, and mittigateth the immode-
rate heate, refreshing greatly the body,
loussyng and opening such thinges the
Whiche befoze were constricted and clud-
dered together.

If the body after labour do swell and
inflate, then let her drynke Water, in the
Whiche is sodden Cicer & Cummin, bea-
ten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuary cal-
led *Diacimimum*, or of the Trochiskes of *Alkechen-
gie*, otherwysse called *Halicacabus*.

Also in this case a clyster made of such thyn-
ges the which do banquishe and expell ventosi-
ties and wyndenesse, as Annis seede, Fenell
seede, Rue the herbe and the seede, Bay berryes,

Cum-

For the ague
in women
with chyld.

7 clustid

The second Booke.

Cummin. &c. Also a pessarie oz suppositar made for that part, of *Aristolochia Rotunda*, *Squinantum*, *Storax Lisquida*, *Dorenicum*, *Zeduaris*.

9
"Afturpauis"

restment.
Muy's wled.

Agayne, yf the woman after her labour haue frettyng and knawynge of the guttes & payne of the Matrix, and other secrete partes there about, then let her vse the vapour and fume of suche thynges the whiche haue bertue to mitigate, swage, and alay the payne, as Hallowes, Holyoke, Fenegreke, Comin, Camomell, and Sauine. Of these also make emplasters and bagges, the whiche may be applyed to the payned places.

Also to annoynt the places with *Oleum sesaminum* (yf it were to be had) oz with oyle of sweete Almondcs. And yf no great heate do abounde in the woman, she may drinke Triacle oz Trifera magna, with wyne in which is decoct Motherwort oz Muggewort.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take Peniriell, Policaria, sixe leaues of baye tree, seeth them together, and receaue the vapour vnderneath closely.

Item, take Rue, red Motherwort, Sothernwood, beate them together, and temper them with the oyle of Penerial, and put all together into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a whyle tyl it be somwhat soden together, and then take it of agayne, & put it into a little rounde linnen bag made for the purpose, the whiche with these herbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomel and Lyne, of eche lyke much

much. iiii. handfulls, bray them together and seeth them with whyte wyne, and then put it in a rounde bag of linnen, as befoze was done, and conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two graynes of muske with wyne.

Item, take whyte Onions and couer them vnder the hote ashes, the whiche when they be well roasted, beate them together with freshe Butter vn salted, and make it in maner of a plaster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places, as befoze: in the meane whyle perfumyng the priuie partes with white frankencence and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be bexed about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Mugge wort, of eche two handfulls, of Wormewood, Sothernwood, of eche one handfull, of Motherwort three handfulls, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe an ounce, decoct all these thinges together, and in the water of this decoction beyng warme, dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, fomenting, sohyng, and strekyng the backe with the same, and so do often tymes, or els put all these foresayd herbes together sodden in a bagge, and lay it plaster wyle to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle Rardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the whiche put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to small powder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anete, oyle of Camomell,

of

The seconde booke.

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lillies two ounces, of Ware two drams, disolue all these together ouer the fyre, and therewith annoint the backe.

What reme-
dies when
the flowres
issue more a-
boundantly
then nedeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres yssue more v: hemently, and in greater aboundaunce then they shoulde, to the great esseblyshyng of the woman, and inducing of much langour and paynefulnes, then first shall ye note wherevpon in commeth, for the cause knowen, the disease may the more redply be recured, and causes of it be diuers, but mooste especiall those that folowe, that is to say: Of much aboundaunt superfluous blood contayned in the whole body, or of much commixtion of the colericke humour and the blood together, by the whiche the blood is enfired and chaufed, and so distendeth, openeth, and setteth abroade the baynes whiche descende to the Matrix.

Also the blood beyng very thyn and waterish, for so it penetrateth, thzilleth, and yssueth forth the sooner. Also if the baynes be very large, and receiue much
bloud,

bloud, for in that case they sende forth the more agayne. And yf the Matrix be vnmightie and weakened, the vaynes lyke wylse weake and large, so that they cannot retayne nor withholde the bloud.

Also if the body of the woman, or the outward partes be very dense, close, and compact together, so that the outward poores be contract and shutte, in suche wise, that no vapours or swet can issue out at them, then this shal cause the yll humours (whiche otherwylse woulde passe through the poores in swet) to remaine within the bodye, and there to engender and encrease great fluxe and aboundaunce of matter, whiche procedeth with the flowres and augmenteth the quantitie of them.

Also yf the vaynes of the Matrix be (by some chaunce) open and flow forth, as yf the Matrix be perysshed or otherwylse viciate. Or yf it chaunce that the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath ben thyruste, or beaten, by all and any
of

The seconde booke.

of this meanes may come this inordinate fluxe of flowres.

Good counsell
sell to the
woman.

Nowe seying then that it ensueth by so manyfold occasions and causes, it shalbe mete that women in this case be nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose their minde vnto expert Physitians, shewing them euery thyng in it, as they knowe wherebpon it shoulde come, so that the Physition vnderstandyng the womans mynde, may the sooner by his learnyng and experience consider the true cause of it, and the very remedye to amende it. And many thinges there be whiche ease and restrayne this ouer muche flowyng of flowres, both Electuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Powders, Clysters, Odours, Suffumigations, Bathes, Plasters, and Oynementes, of whiche for the loue of women I wyll here set forth the most principall and best.

First then to stinte and restayne the outrageous fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to binde the armes straight and strongly, and not the feete or handes, as some vnwyle men do
teache

with three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the rose Sugre, and let her receave of it in the Mornyng and Evening, at eche tyme one dram, with. vi. spoonfulles of Plantane water, or els the water of *Bursa pastoris*.

Item, take of the stone *Emathites*, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentimes, butyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery mornyng let the woman drynke. iiii. oz. v. spoonfulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of *Carabe*, or *Ambze*, and the Trochiskes of *Bole armeniacke*, which must be ministred a dram or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. oz. v. spoonfulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Nowe if it be so that there be engendered any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clensted, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of *Nightshade*,

The second Booke.

Scraping of a goates horne, red Corall, *Terra sigillata*, whyte Frankensence, of eche (beyng well and finely beaten) two drams, of whyte ware two ounces: al those tempered together, make them in an oyntment, and therwith annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bath concernynge the same.
Take Worme wood, Plantane the more and the lesse, the toppes of Wynes, freshe braunches of wylde Mulberies, or of the bramble, bnrype Damassons, Sloes or Bolasse, wylde Peares, Medlers or Mispyles, of eche thre handfuls, of red rose leaues two handfules, of Daisies, of all sortes of Thystles, of eche two handfuls, of Cinkfoyle the leaues and rootes, Cozmen-tyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne cuppes a sawcerfull, of Gaules, of Acornes pylled, of *Bursa pastoris*, of eche two handfules, beate all these to powder, cutting and brosyng that that wyl not be beaten to powder, and seeth them together in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water by to the Naupill, and when she commeth forth of the bath, geue her to drinke two drams of *Electuarium Athanasie*, or *Miclete*, with Plantayne water, or yf she be soze thursty, with red wyne.

And lyke wyse ye maye geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde roose Suger two ounces, of red Coral, burnt Iuery, Wole armeniacke, of eche two drams, of *Hemas*

three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the rose Sugre, and let her receave of it in the Mornyng and Evening, at eche tyme one dram, with. vi. sponesfulles of Plantane water, or els the water of *Bursa pastoris*.

Item, take of the stone *Ematbites*, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentimes, butyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery mornyng let the woman drynke. iiii. oz. v. sponesfulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of *Carabe*, or *Ambze*, and the Trochiskes of *Bole armeniacke*, which must be ministred a dram or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. oz. v. sponesfulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Nowe if it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clenfed, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of *Nightshade*,

The second Booke.

Shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those things be tempered together, and the places annoynted therewith.

Item otherwyse. Take the Whyte of an egge, Womans mylke, the iuyce of Purslane, and temper al these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the reste, howe to open, drye and clense such Apostumations, ye must consult With some Phisition or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth forth both in man and Woman, and specially in Women in this busines, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng With them selfe: Wherefore in this case it is the Mydwifes parte, With her hande Warmed and Wet in Whyte Wine, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the Which yf she can not by this meanes, for because peraduenture it be Swollē, then
let

let her dissolve butter in Whyte Wyne warmed, and therein dip Woll, with the which wrappe the same gutte a Whyle, so doying often tymes tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in againe. And ye may vse in the steade of Whyte Wine luke warme mylke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: Take ware and melt it together with Masticke oz whyte frankensence, then spreade it vpon linnen plaster wyle, and laye it ouer the place where it came forth, byndyng it to, with a linnen cloth oz roller, for partying of. And let this be done thus so often as she goeth to stoole, after that she hath done, vntyll such tyme that it be so settled within, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupy ware: then dyppe woll in the oyle of Masticke, oz of Spyke Nard, & lay it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. washe and soke the gut with the water in which is decocte and sodden such thinges which exicate, drye, and constrain oz combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuts, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Masticke, Frankensence, *Sanguis draconis*, and when it is well washed and soaked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it againe

The second Booke.

into his place.

Agayne, sometyme it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour the Matrix is remoued out of his place, & appeareth forth: Then let it be washed and soked with the water in which be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nuttes, Spyke narde, *Balaustium*, Acorne cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Hespylles, and vnrype wylde Peares, and vnrype Apples, Plummes, and Damsons oz Bollasse, of eche a handefull. And suche of those as be to be powdered, beate them to powder, and the rest deuide and cut them small, then seeth them altogether in rayne water, oz els in water in the whiche Steele, beyng redde hotte, hath ben oftentimes quenched, and in the same water let the partie bathe her by to the Nauyll, oz els dyp a sponge oz a Locke of wool in it, and therewith washe and soke the same Matrix oftentimes. Then euer with a sayre cleane linnen cloth wype it cleane agayne, and strewe bypon it the powder folowynge, beaten very small, and searsed through sylle.

Take of frankensence, *Carabe*, Galles, *Balaustium*, Cipres nuttes, Alome, *Antimony*, Bole Armeniacke, Masticke, of eche lyke much, beate all these to very fine powder, & strewe the Matrix with it, then tenderly reduce it into his place agayne with warme linnen clothes binding it by. Ent
yf

if so be that the Matrix be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyll not be restozed to his naturall place agayne, then dissolue butter in whyte wyne, as ye dyd befoze, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometime it chaunceth that the womans Nauyl through labour is dissolued, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tente of fine linnen, and annoynt it with this oymnt that followeth, & the same put into the Nauyll.

Remedies for the womans Nauyl, when it openeth it selfe for paine in the labour.

Take whyte Frankensence, and beate it to powder, and then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid hony, with this annoynt the Nauyll within and without, annoynting also the tent, the which being put in the hole of the Nauyl, binde some cloth ouer it to kepe it in his place.

Item, many tymes it chaunceth that thozow the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priute parte and the fundament become one, by reaso of rupture and breaking of the same part in the deliuerance of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matrix descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thying chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

Howe that sometime the priute parte & fundament become ont.

The second Booke.

the same place is very narrowe and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceadeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this mishappe falleth, fyrste washe and soke the Matrix, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before, then heale this bracke & wounde by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threde, as Chirurgions do other woundes, & yf that lyke ye not, then maye ye cure it other wyse without sowyng, thus.

Take two lyttle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fyngers broade, spreade the little clothes with some fast cleaving plaster, the which wyll cause the cloutes to sticke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one side of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothing appeare betwene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them but only the clyfte and ryfte of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sydes of the linnen together close, as before I byd you to sowe the skyn, and when they be thus stytched together, lay a little

The second booke. Fol. lxxxii.

little liquid pitche or tarre vpon the seame. And this done, the lappes and sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyll growe together agayne and heale, and then maye ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dzyed, and beate it to powder, also a little quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strow of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of abozementes, or vntymely birthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it maye be defended, holpen, and eased.

Cap. vii.



Abozement, or vntymelye birth, is when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be ripe (as in the.iii.iiii. or v. moneth) before the birth haue lyfe, and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is delyuered before it stirre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the whiche thynge there be many and diuers causes.

Many causes of vntymely birthes.

First, sometimes the mouth of the
Matrix

Matrix is so large and ample, that it can not conveniently close it selfe together, neither conteine the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted & infected with vicious, slymye, fleumaticke, and other wateryshe humours, that the cavitie or holownesse therof is thereby made so slipperye that the feature conceaved can not there remaine, but slyppeth and slydeth foorth againe. Also sometymes the Matrix is apostumated and soze, so that for payne it can not conteyne the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotilidons, that is the vaines by the which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrix (thorowe the which also the feature receiueth nourishment and foode, as is declared in the first Booke) be stopped with viscos & yll humours, or els swollen by inflasion, so that they breake, by the whiche meanes, the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perysbeth and dyeth, & that most commonly in the seconde or thirde moneth after

after conception. Wherefore Hipocrates
saith: All such Women Whiche be im-
pregnate or conceiued, being of a meane
state in their body (that is to say, nether
to fatte or grosse, ne to spare or leane) yf
it chaunce any suche to aboꝛse in the se-
conde or thirde moneth (no other eui-
dent cause appearing) knowe ye for cer-
taine, that it ensueth for because the Co-
tilidons be opplete, stopped, and stuffed
with yll humours, and be swollen and
puffed therewith that they breake, and
so consequentely the feature dyeth for
fant of foode.

Item, aboꝛsement sometyme com-
meth by reason that some of the places
about the Matrix be diseased and grie-
ued, as yf *Intestinum rectum*, Whiche is cal-
led the fundement gut, be vicerate, ha-
uyng the pyles or Hemorroides, or the
visicke or bladder be swollen or encūbꝛed
with the stone, the strangury, or other e-
uil. In these cases through the great la-
bour & paine the which the partie hath
in endeuoring & enforcing her self other
to

Aboꝛsement
by reason of
some grieffe
about the
Matrix.

The second Booke.

to stoole, or to make Water, be engendred great motions downeward, whereby many times the handfastnes of the Cotilidons is broken.

Aborcement
by Tenas-
mus.

Also aborcement maye come of a disease called *Tenasmus*, the which is when one hath ever great desyre and luste to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, nevertheless the parties greatly do enforce and payne them selfe to it. And as *Hipocrates* saith, the pregrnaunt woman which hath *Tenasmus*, for the moste parte abhorteth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chylde out of tyme.

Aborcement
through the
cough.

Item the cough, if it be greuous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent *Philition* saith, suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, evermore lyghtly do aborce, for because that all the meate and foode the which they receyve, turneth to foode, noyrishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodes, and so is the conception destitute of foode, wherefore necessarily it dyeth.

Item

Item, this chaunce also comineth by ouermuch bleeding at the nose, or other where, or issuyng of the flowres immoderately. And so saith *Hypocrates*, yf the woman yelde flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature do long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstande, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and verye spare, or yf it be after the third moneth, for it maye be well, that in the first and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet little foode and noysment satisfieth the conception, for the smalnesse therof.

Item, to be let bloud may be the cause of aboꝛsement, whiche must be vnderstande, in such as haue but little store of bloud: but such as haue great copie and plentie of bloud, may without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let bloud, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I woulde that none shoulde be let bloud, except some great and wayghtie cause

The second Booke.

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by taking of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth, and after the seuenth moneth.

And yf it be so that any necessitie do so require, that she must needes receaue a purgation, let it be done betwene the fourth and the seuenth moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easy.

Also this maye come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blouddy or other wyse, and speciall ye yf the Woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and peryshed. Also ouermuch vometyng may be cause of aborsment, for by ouermuch galpyng and reachyng bywardes, the Cotilidons may be broken, and so the fea- ture to peryshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger and also sharpe and feruent sickenesse maye be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodayne pallye,

pallie, the falling sicknesse. &c. Also
ouer much dronkenes, and excesse fee-
dyng and surfettyng, by the which the
byrth is suffocate and strangled in the
belly, and the foode corrupt for lacke of
due digestion.

Item, if the birch be sicke by any out-
warde or inwarde cause, or yf the Se-
condine in the which the featur is con-
teyned, do breake before his tyme, and
the humours and waters of the same
flowe issue forth, causing the place to be
styppery, and so the birch to slide away
vntymely: Or if the mother haue taken
very great cold, or ouer great heat, whi-
che weaknech both mother and chylde.

And therefore ought women with
chylde to ercheue much bathing or go-
ing to the hot houses in their teemyng,
for that may do hurt thzee wayes.

Fyrste, that it kyndeletch or enflameth
the ayre or breath conteyned in the bo-
dye, and so stypfletch the chylde, & some-
tyme the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, &
looseth

looseth the Cotilidons, and so maketh the birth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the vtter heate of the bath, encrease the inwarde heate of the body: In so much, that the birth not beyng able to sustayne and abide the heate, naturally proceadeth for refrigeration and cooling: but in the time or about the time of labour, she maye vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite deliuerance.

Cause of a
bozement
by mutation
of the wea-
ther.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, maye be cause of abozement. For (as *Hypocrates* writeth) Whensoever the Wynter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & drye, such Women in that spryng tyde maye sone and of a light cause haue abozement: Or yf they abozce not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great payne and the birth shalbe very weake & sickelye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by and by, it shal proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

For when that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hoate and moyste weather heateth and moisteth the womans body, and by that the bodye is opened, vnloosed, & resolued, no lesse then though she were every day bathed, and vppon this when the springe tyde commeth, if it be colde and dry, finding the body open and vnloosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the soner and the more vehemently, and the byrth feelyng the sodaine colde and chaunge of weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered, or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to kepe life in it.

Item, aborcement may happen by ouer muche styrryng of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leapyng, or by some fall or thrust against some wall, or beating, or by some sodain anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodayne and vnlookedfor ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche mooste commonly

The seconde booke.

monly maye ensue abozcement oz vntymely byrth, the whiche no doubt is much more grieffe and payne to the woman, then the very naturall labour, for such thynges as chaunce to man oz woman contrary to nature, oz before nature doth require it, is farre greater grieffe, then the same happenyng and commyng in his due season.

* Signes whereby ye may fozelee abozcement.

Tokens to
fozelee a
bozement.



When the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to go before. First her brestes which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to waxe lesse, to fall, and to flagge, and then euer for the most part abozcement foloweth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, whiche before was in good lyknyng, the other remaynyng sounde and safe, then loke of what side the breste is of, and the chyld of that syde is in peryll. Wherefore Hipocrates wyrteth, yf the ryght breast flake oz flagge, the masculine oz
male

male byrth is in peryll, if the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other feminine, the man lieth in the right ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Alſo another ſigne of aboꝛcement is, when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, and that ſhe begin to waxe red in the face, and all partes of the body to ſhake and tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palſey in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braynes, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a werynes without any outward apparent cauſe, why theſe thinges portende and ſignifie aboꝛcement to be at hande, ſpecially if at the ſame time the flowres iſſue alſo.

Item, yf the womans body do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardeneſſe or ſtyfeneſſe, and that ſhe feele ſitches, and as it were ventofitie or wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

The seconde booke.

to the other, and yet the belly notwithstanding, beyng nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do persist and continue any Whyle, the Woman takyng and eatyng suche thynges whiche haue vertue to discusse and vanquishe ventositie and Wyndynesse, this thyng I saye doth betoken peryll of aborcement through ventositie and inflation, and that chiefly about the thirde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be prouyded and foreseene the aborcement before it come. Nowe wyll I shewe you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies
whereby to
auoyde a
borcement.

The chiefe remedy to auoyde aborcement is, to shun all such thinges which may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of already, but yf ye feare aborcement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,

large, then must ye vse suche thynges, whose operation is to contrahē, constrainē and bring together, as Bathes, Funigations, Oyntmentes, Plasters, Odours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken before, and such thinges the whiche repressē and stynte the flow-ers flowyng ouer muche after the birth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slippery, other because that the cotilidons be replete and fulfilled with viscos humours, and with inflations or ventosities, then may ye defend it by vsyng of such thynges whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to repressē ventosities, whereof also we haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not to make some expert Phisition of your counsaile, yf ye may haue such one, for because that many such thinges come, and not all by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubtē peryll forbecause

The second Booke.

that the matrix or other places about
be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate,
or haupng the stone or strangury, and
suche other thynge, then aske and vse
the aduice of some Well learned medi-
cine, and he shall shewe you howe all
thynge shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare abozcement be-
cause the partie is very Weake and low
brought, then let her feede on such thin-
ges the Whiche moysten and nouryshe
Wel, or fatten the body, as Capons flesh,
Kyd, Lambe, yongue Meale, Partridge
and such other.

Agayne, if the woman be taken With
any sharpe and fell disease, then let her
be cured of the same as shortly as can
be, With such thinges the Which apper-
tayne to the curyng of such disease, or if
she haue susteyned any long famine or
hunger, then let her be fedde With good
meates and drinke moderately taken,
and yf she haue surfetted by ouer much
eatynge and drynkyng (as nowe a
dayes most commonly people do) then
let

let her abstayne for a time, and if it may be conveniently done, let her receyue some easy and gentle medicine, whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfettyng burthen, especially by vomittynge, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of water luke warme, wherin hath ben sodden two sponesfuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, with her fynger or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in bloude, then shall it be very good a litle to let her bloud, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thoroowe ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangeled, of the whiche thyng also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare abozement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbreakyng, or the fluxe, or of the disease called *Tenasmus*, or of ouermuche issuyng

The second Booke.

of bloud, Whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduice of a Physitian for remedie, if for the fragilitie, tendernesse, and bracke of the secundine, she feare this aborcement, for because that in this case the secundine shall not be able to holde and contayne the birth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that she hurt not her selfe by ouer much mouyng or stirryng, as by labouryng, daunsyng, runnyng, standyng, faste goyng, or carryng of ponderous and wayghtie thynges, or lyftyng of the same. And to be short, let her with all warynesse take heede and be diligent that she excheue and abstayne from all such thynges the whiche myght cause and induce aborcement.

* Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, and by what meanes it may also be expelled.

Cap. ix.

Ishalbe nowe conuenient for vs to speake of dead birthes, howe it shalbe knowen that they be dead, and howe they may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to know whether the child be dead in the mothers wombe.

* Signes then that the birth is dead in the Mothers wombe, be these.

- i. First, yf the mothers brestes do suddenly flake, as I touched before.
- ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng wont before to styre.
- iii. If when the Mother turneth her from the one side to the other, she feele it falling from thone side to the other like a stone or a dead wayght.
- iiii. If her belly and Nauyll begyn to ware colde, which before was wont to be temperately hotte.
- v. If any stynkyng and fylthy humours flowe from the Matrix, and chiefly after some fell disease.
- vi. If the womans eyes ware hollow & that her colour chaunge from Whyte to swart and dunne colour, and that her eyes and nose ware astonyed, and haue

The second Booke.

have not their right vse, and her lippes
Ware Wanne.

vii. If beneath the Nauell and about
the secrete partes she feele great thzong
& payne, the colour of her face chaunge
yng into Worse and Worse, otherwyle
then it was wont to do.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche
thynges which be agaynst nature, and
not wont to be eaten oz dronken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with
bayne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye with
the strangurpe, oz that she enforce her
selfe muche to the stoole, & with all her
power, and yet can not do any thyng.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the
whiche thyng lyghtly happeneth two
oz thzee dayes after the byrth be dead.

xii. If her handes put into very warme
water, and then layde on the womans
belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe
that it is dead.

Of all these signes nowe, the more
that come together of them at one
tyme

tyme and in one person, the surer may
ye be that the birth is dead, the Whiche
beyng once dead, all diligence must be
hadde that it may be expelled out of the
Womans body.

But here must ye see againe whether
it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe sa-
ued or no, for sometyme it chaunceth
that the Mother dyeth withall, and
sometymes the Mother doth Well and
prospereth.

Whether the Mother shalbe in peryl
withall, or no, by these thynges shall
ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the
labour slowne or feare, as though she
were in a traunce: if her remembraunce
fayle her, and she waxe feeble and scant
able to moue or stirre her selfe, yf she
(called with a loude voyce) can aun-
swere nothyng at all, or els very lit-
tle, and that very softly, as though her
voyce began to fayle her: if she be inua-
ded or taken among in the labouryng
with conuulsion or shrynkelyng toge-
ther: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:
yf

To knowe
whether the
mother shall
be in peryl
or no.

The second Booke.

pf her pulces beate very fast, the Which signes When ye see in the Woman labo-
ryng, it is an euident token that she shal
not lyue long after her delyueraunce,
Wherefore commit the cure of her to the
handes of almyghtie God: but if none
of these signes do appeare, then haue
good hope, for the Woman shall do well,
the byrth beyng once departed: Where-
fore geue all diligence to the expulsion
of it, that the Woman maye be delyue-
red of this dead burthen, the whiche
thyng maye be done by two wayes,
eyther by medicines expulsyue, or els
by certayne instrumentes made for the
nonce.

Two menes
to expel dead
byrthes.

fumigation

First without instrumentes, with this fu-
migation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of
an Aste, and put it on coles, and let the woman
recepue the fume vnderneath.

¶ Another.

Take the skynne of an Adder, Myrre, *Castorium*,
Bymstone, *Galbanum*, *Oppoponacum*, Madder that the
Dyers occupie, Pygeons dongue, or Hawkes
dongue, beate al these to powder, & temper them
with Oxe gal, & make pylles of it, eche the quan-
titie of a sylberde nutte, and then put one after
another

another in the coales, and receyue the fume thorough a pipe or conduite made for that purpose into the priuities.

Another, take *Encense*, *Oppoponacum*, *Galbanum*, *Sinistone*, of eche lyke much, beate them together, and temper them with *Oxe gall*, and make pilles of them, and then of the same make fumigations, as befoze.

A potion for the same purpose, take *Asa fetida*, halfe a dram, of *Rue* three drams, of *myzre* two drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder with whyte wine, or with water in the whiche *Sauine* is sodden.

Another, take *figges*, *fenegreke*, *Organnie*, and seeth them in water, the whiche geue vnto the woman to drinke, for this drinke wyll engender lubricitie and slippernes in the nether partes, and vse also some of those thinges which haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we entreated befoze.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries concerning the same, take *Gumme*, *Ammoniacke*, *Oppoponacum*, *Heliborus niger*, *Staphisagre*, *Aristolochia longa*, and *Colocintbis* without his kernalles, beate all these thynges together, temperyng them with *Oxe gall*, and also with the iuyce of freshe *Rue*, then make a pessary of wollen, & annoynt and wette the pessarie with the same, conuaying it into the secrete places.

Item another, make a pessarie of wollen, of the length and thiknes of a finger, and dippe
it

Encense

Sauine

Pessaries

The seconde booke.

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolued a quantitie of Scammonie, and do with that pessarie, as befoze.

Item, take *Aristolochia rotunda*, Sauine, Garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Oxe gall, with this annoint a pessarie made and ordered as befoze is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drinke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe two dramms, and geue the same to drinke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shall ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shall expell the dead byrth without any perill of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrre foure drammes, of Cinamome, *Galbanum*, *Castorium*, of eche two dramms, of *Oppoponacum*, one dramme, all those beaten and tempered together with Oxe gall, make pylles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the nether partes, by this vapour the dead birch is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of bloud is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sothernwood, Mugge wort, of eche a handfull, of *Asphaltum* halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomell, Horehound, Fenegreke, of eche two ounces, seeth all these thynges together in
rayne

womans
milk

Myrre
Cinamome

rayne water, in the which let the woman bathe her selfe, then take of Hense grease and Duches grease, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche ad two ounces of oyle of Bill seede, with this oyntment annoynt the womans head commyng out of the bathe, then take Date stones and beate them to powder a dram and an halfe, with a scruple of Safran tempered together with whyte wyne, the whiche let her immediately drinke after she come forth of the bathe.

Item, take *Oppoponacum*, and make thereof a pessarye the quantitie of a synger, conuey it into the priuities, this expelleth the dead byrth.

Item, take of *Galbanum* a dramme or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the *Galbanum* beyng dissolued, geue it to the woman to drinke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take *Galbanum*, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Motherwort, and of this make a plaster by putting to of waxe a certayne quantitie, then take a linnen cloth of such length and bredth, that it may couer all the belly vnder the nauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this cloth sprede this plaster of the thicknes of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called *Diascaldarum*, and geue of it to the woman for to drinke, and it wyll expell the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profite not, then must

ESTIMANDUM
M. 15. 15. 15. 15. 15.

of *placitis*
M. 15. 15. 15. 15. 15.

The seconde booke.

musse be vsed moze seuerer and harde remedies, with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and such other thynges made for the nonce. And fyrst the woman musse be layde a long vpright, the middle part of her body lying hier then all the rest, comparyed of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to kepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she rise not withall. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her lefte hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other that may make it soople and smothe, and holding out her fingers hitting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix to feele and perceyue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hokes and such other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

If it be so that it lye the head forwarde, then fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, or the roose of the mouth, or vnder the chin, on one of the shoulders, whiche of these partes shall seeme mosse commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderly for hurtyng of the woman.

But if it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priuie partes, or by some ribbe, or some of the backe bones, or of the brest bones, and when this hooke is thus fastened, the Midwife may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte hande

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other parte of the byrth ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her draw both together, so that the byrth may proceade and come forth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyl ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the commyng forth with the foresyngger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to sticke oz to be lette any where: and as it commeth forth, alwaye to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes onely of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bywarde agayne, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth that it slyp not by agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyll such tyme that the hole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cut it of from the body: and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrste at once, oz one legge oz both, yf they cannot be returned backe to be otherwyle taken out conuenientlye. As ye cut the armes from the shoulders, so lykewyle cuttynge the legges from the thyghes, for the which purpose the Chirurgions haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which such legges and armes may sone be cut frō the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cut from the bodye, then turne the rest, so that it maye easelye proceade, with as lyttle payne to the mother as

The second Booke.

may be.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyll not conveniently issue out that narrow places: Then let the Mydwife with a sharpe penknife cut open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to ware lesse, able to be plucked out: But yf it be so, that not by any suche casualtie the head be bygge, but onelye of a naturall growth, then muste the head be broken in pieces, and the partes euermore taken forth with such instrumentes, as the Chirurgions haue readye and necessarye for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the brest part woulde not folow for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lyke wyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lyke wyse yf all the reste of the body should be so swollen that it woulde not proceade ne come forth, then must it lyke wyse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

Farthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be exulcerate or appostumate, so that the passage bee made the narrower by that meanes, the dryer and the more contract: then must ye fyrst study and endeuour you to soople and ease the places by oyles and other greases, suche as I spake of sufficiently befoze in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also

Also yf the dead byrth come sydelonge, then muste ye do what maye be done to conuerte and turne it to such fashion, that it may most easly be brought forth. The Matrix and other secretes must be annoynted, perfumed, and vapoured with such thinges the which may make it moze ample and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cut out by peece mele, as is befoze spoken of. And yf after this delyueraunce the flowres issue ouer behemently, then vse such thynges as haue vertue to restryne them, of the whiche I haue spoken in the. vi. Chapter befoze.

But contrary to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chylde hauyng lyfe in it: then shal it be meete to kepe open the womans mouth, and also the nether places, so that the chylde may by that meanes both receaue and also expell ayre and breath, which otherwyle myght be stopped, to the destruction of the chylde. And then to turne her on the lefte syde, and there to cut her open, and so take out the chylde. They that be borne after this fashion are called Cesares, for be-

cause they be cut out of theyr mothers belly: wherupon also the noble

Romayne Cesar the fyrste
toke his name,

The second Booke.

In the last Chapter of this booke be hysely
recited certayne experte medicines which be
most requisite to the chiefe purpose
entended in this presente
booke. Chap. r.

Asomuch as the pyncipall en-
tent and ende of this booke is, to
shewe the meanes and medici-
nes, whereby the womans la-
bour may be made the more ea-
sy: Therfoze here I wyll com-
pendeously set foorth certayne medicines, oynt-
mentes and emplasters, such as shalbe suffici-
ent and mozte requisite to that purpose, and
suche agayne as hath ben well experimented
and practysed: The which also it shalbe conue-
nient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in
a readynesse agaynste theyr tyme of neede. For
although that nature be the chiefe and headde
doer in all this busynesse, (as in conception,
bearynge, and the byrth:) yet notwithstanding,
medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and for-
tifie nature, beyng somtyme impedit and let-
ted, yea, impotent and not able to do her office as
shoulde appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour
is come, yf she labour long and paynefully, and
yet the byrth do not proceade: then for the more
expedite and quicke delyueraunce, geue her of
this medicine folowynge.

Take of the finest Cinamome that may be
chosen

The seconde Booke. Fol. xcvi.

chosen.iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe fyrst shred it in very small peeces, and then beat it to very fine powder.

Item of Saffron dried by the fyre tyll it be blacke, of *Cassia lignea*, fine Reubarbe, Sauiue dried, Myrre, of eche of these seuen scruples, of pure muske. xvi. graynes, euery of these simples exquisitely by them selues powdered, and then perfectly myxed in one, with. vi. oz .vii. droppes of Maluesey, temper the hole masse into lyttle roundels oz trochiskes, eche waying a dram. And in tyme of neede at the womans labour, geue her hardly the wayght of .vi. d. of these trochiskes beaten into fine powder, with foure spoonefulles of Slope water, and other foure of good wine secke.

This medicine is not onely profitable at this tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notably good to expell the after byrth, oz any other suche lyke matter in that place, hauynge neede of expulsion.

Item, yf nede do so require, it shalbe verye expedient to haue this emplaster folowynge, in a redynesse, the whiche sped abroade vpon a linnen cloth, either els vpon lether, and so applyed to the bottome of the bellye in as large maner as maye be, dilateth and openeth the poozes of that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth & dissolueth them, whereby that that is contayned in the bellye fyndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greuaunce of the mother.

Take of *Emplastrum de Melliloto*, of *Diacbilou*, of *Oxyroscen*,

The second Booke.

of eche two ounces, of the rootes of *Afarum*, of wyld Peppre dryed, the leaues of *Bemiogm*, of tosted Cummin, of eche two dragmes, of good *Castorium*, iii. dragmes, of the oyle of *Dyll* one or two sponefulles: such of these as are to be poudered, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the belly and the priuie passage, to prouoke and drawe forth the latter or hynder byrth yf nede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then laye to this plaster folowing, which is of much more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Serapinum*, *Myrrhe*, of eche an ounce, of *Colloquintida*, *Heleborus niger*, of eche two drams, of *Castorium*, *Pirethrum* and *Storax liquida*, of eche thre drams, of *Turpentine* and *Petroleum*, of eche foure drams. fyrst ouer a soft fyre temper the *Turpentine*, *Petroleum*, and *Storax liquida*, together, then thereto adde *Colloquintida*, *Heleborus*, *Castorium* and *Pirethrum*, beyng fyrst well and finely beaten to powder: after put to the *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Serapinum* and *Myrrhe*, beyng fyrst dissolued in good *Maluesey*, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effect to prouoke the after byrth.

Item vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layde plasterwyle to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item, the leaues or flowres of *Mary golde* dzonke with white wyne, expelle the afterbirth.

Also

The second booke fol. xcviij.

Also the sayde leaues and flowres dzyed, and at tyme of nede, kyndeled with a ware candle, and the fume therof receaued vnderneath into the priuie part, prouoketh out meruelously the after byrth.

Item a comfoztable potion, to be taken after the deliuerance of the chyld.

Take of the swetest garden Myntes, grene or dzye, of the leaues of Bawme grene also or dzye, of the leaues of *Maioram*, the rootes of Fenell the pyth take out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemary, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dzyed red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, moze or lesse as it pleaseyth you, of Cloues and Mase brosed a lyttle, the weyght of two pence, of Cinamome shredde in small portions the wayght of .vi. grotes, knyt al these together in a cloute or lyttle linnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quarte of Borage water the space of a daye and a nyght: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wyne Secke, or els Muscadel: and beyng myxt togeather, put therto a lyttle of the conserue of Barberics, conserue of Borage flowers, conserue of Rosemary flowres, and drynke hereof euerye daye the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure sponefulles of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wyne. And this potion shall both comfozt the woman, and also helpe greatly to the expulsion of all noysome thynges to be expelled.

100 The seconde Booke.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common vsage to geue often to womē in theyr chylde bed ca'wdels of Otemeele, thynkyng and saying therby the woman to be scoured: whereas in deede the sayde Otemeele is a notable bynder and dryer. Therfore ye shall vnderstand, that the ryght vse therof is, to geue it to suche as haue alreadye ben well and sufficiently scoured and clensted from their after birth, and other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and case: but yf the woman be not sufficiently purged alreadye, then geue her no Otemeele ca'wdels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the women readers hereof, to accept and suffise them selues with these fewe medicines here in this Chapter mencioned, and often by me and other practised. The which thyng yf they shall do so, it shall (no doubt) be occasion to me the soner to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to refrethe and furnyssh the same with newe and much moze excellent experiences then hath ben yet hytherto read or sene in any booke, concerning such matters.

And as touchyng the aboue Trochiskes and emplasters descrybed here in this place, ye shall fynde them alwayes ready made in Bouchersbery in London.

In this first Chapter of the thyrð Booke
 is fyrst declared the matters therein conteyned,
 and then howe the Infant newly borne
 must be handeled, nourished and
 loked to. Chap. i.



In the second booke
 we haue sufficient-
 lye and at length
 declared the ma-
 ners, fashions and
 diuersities of bir-
 thes, with the daū-
 gers and perylls
 often chaunling to

What is to
 be done
 when the
 chyld is
 borne.

the Women at theyr labours, and after
 the same. And nowe here in this thyrð
 booke shalbe entreated What is to be
 done to the infant borne. And how to
 chole a Nurse, & of her office. With ma-
 nyfolde medicines, & remedies agaynst
 sundry infirmities, Whiche estsones
 happen to Infantes in theyr infansye.

Then after that the Infant is once come to
 lyght, by and by the Nauyll muste be cut three
 fyngers breadyth from the belly, and so knyt vp,
 and let be strued on the head of that that remay-
 neth, of the powder of Bole armeniacke, and
Sanguis draconis, *Sarcocola*, *Myrrhe*, and *Cummin*, of
 eche lyke muche beaten to powder, then vpon
 that

The first Booke.

that bynd a peece of woll, dypped in oyle Olive that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrste to knyt the Nauyll, and after to cut it so much, as is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some saye, that of what length the reste of the Nauyll is left, of the same length shal the chyldes tonge be, if it be a man child. Itē *Auicenna* saith, that diuers things may be knowen by markyng of the chyldes Nauyll: For (as he sayth) When the woman is deliuered of her first chyld, then beholde the Nauyl of the chyld: Which if in that part of it, which is next vnto the body it haue neuer a wrinkle, it portendeth and doeth signifie perpetuall from thenceforth sterilitie or barrennes. And yf it haue any wrinkles in it: then so manye wrinkles, so many children shal the woman haue in time to come. Also some ad to this & say, that if there be lyttle space betwene these wrinkles in the nauil, the shal ther be also little space betwene the bearyng of the children: if much, it signifieth long tyme betwene the bearyng of them: but these sayinges be nether in the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.

Nowe to returne to our purpose, when that the Nauyll is cut of, and the rest knyt vp: annoynt all the chyldes bodye with the oyle of Alcorns, for that is singularly good to confirme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, which maye chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and suche other thynges: whiche yf the Infant be greued withall straight after the birth, beyng yet verye tender, it shoulde hurte it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your synger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nolethryles, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes sittynge place, that it may be prouoked to pouрге the bellye. And chiefly it must be defended from ouer much colde, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant of the knotte of the Nauyll is fallen (the whiche commonlye chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth daye) then on the reste remaynyng, strewe the powder of Ashes of a Calles houe burnt, or of Snayle Shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wyne.

Farthermore, when the Infante is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and hede that she bynd euery parte ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tendernesse and gentle entreatynge, and not crokedly and confuselye, the whiche also

The thirde Booke.

also must be done oftentimes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in younge and tender ympes, plantes and twygges: the whiche, euen as ye bowe them in theyr youth, so wyll they euer moze remayne vnto age. And euen so the Infant, if it be bound and swadled, the members lyinge ryght and strayght, then shall it growe strayght and bpryght. If it be crokedly handled, it wyll growe lykewyse. And to the yl negligence of many Nourles may be imputed the crokednesse and defozmitie of many a man and woman, which otherwyle myght seme as well fauoured as any other.

By the only neglygence of Nourles many chylde groweth crokebacked & wyperlegged.

Item let the chylde's eyes be oftentimes wiped and clenled with a fine and cleane linnen cloth, or with silke. And let the armes of the Infant be verie strayght layde downe by the sydes, that they maye growe ryght, and sometyme strokyng the belly of the chylde before the besicke or bladder, to helpe to ease and to prouoke the chylde to the makynge of water, and when ye lay it in the Cradell to slepe, sette the Cradell in such a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther of the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head euer somewhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed twoo or three tymes in the day, & that anon after slepe, in the winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with luke warm water, nether let it tary long in the water, but vnto such tyme as the bodye begyn to

to war red for heate, but take hede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that would greatly hurt his hearyng another day.

Then to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dyled with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe bywarde, the whiche with her hands let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it by, and to swaddell it, and when it is swadled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nosethrylles of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

Of the Purse and her mylke: and howe longe the chylde shoulde sucke. Chap. ii.



Concernyng the bringyng by, nourysh-
 mente, and geuyng of
 sucke to the chylde, it
 shalbe beste that the
 mother geue her chylde
 sucke her selfe, for the
 mothers milke is more
 conuenyent and agre-
 able to the Infant,
 then any other wo-
 mans, and more doth it nourysh it, for because
 that in the mothers belly it was wont to the
 same, and fed with it, and therfore also it doth
 more desyrouslye couet the same, as that with
 the which it is best acquainted. And to be short,
 the mothers mylke is moste holsommest for the
 chylde.

The mo-
 thers mylke
 best and most
 familer to
 the chylde.

The third Booke.

chylde, as *Auicenna* writeth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twyse or thryse in a daye. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloying of it, and least also it loth it: but rather let it haue often of it and lyttle at once, then fewe tymes and ouermuch at once. For suche as bee ouer cloyed with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr bodye to swell and inflate, and in theyr brine shall it appeare, that it is not ouercome ne concocted or digested in the chylde: whiche thynge yet yf it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyll such tyme as that which it hath receaued already be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe or coleryke, let her neuer geue the chylde her brest fastyng. Yf it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sicknesse, or that her brestes be sore, and her mylke corrupted: then lette her chouse a holosome Nurse, with these condicions folowynge.

To chouse a
good Nurse.

Firste that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and brest be of good largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to sone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her labour at the leaste, and that (yf it may be) such one which had a man chylde.

Thyrddly, that she be of meane and measurable lykynge, neyther to fat ne to leane. Fourthly, that she be good and honest of conuersation, neyther ouer hasty or yrefull, ne to sadde or solome

lome, neyther to fearefull or timorous: for these affections and qualities bee pernycious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe forth through the mylke into the chylde, makynge the chylde of lyke condicion and maners. Also that they be not ouerlight and wanton of behauiour. fyfthly, that her brestes be full, and haue sufficient plenty of mylke, and that they be neyther to great, softe, hangyng, and flaggynge, ne to lyttle, harde, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also loke vpon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, grey, or reddyshe, neyther sower, sharpe, saltysh, or brackyshe, neyther thyn and fluy, neyther ouer grosse and thicke, but temperately whyte and pleasaunt in taste.

And to be short, that mylke is best and mooste to be chosen, of the which a drop beyng mylked softly vpon the nayle of the thombe, holdynge your synger styl it rolleth not of, neyther flyteth abroade, but yf ye moue your hande a lyttle, it wyll flyde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it spreade abrode, and flyt by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styl when that ye moue a lyttle your hande, then is it to spysse and thicke. The meane betwene both is best.

If it be so that the Nurlers mylke be to hot, sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chylde sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometyme it chaunseth that the mothers or Nurlers mylke doeth fayle or decrease, the which

THE CONSIDERATION OF THE NURSES MILKE

The consideration of the Nurlers mylke

The third Booke.

Dyuers cau-
ses of the de-
fect or falling
of mylke.

which thynge may come by dyuers causes: as by sickenesse, by disease in the brestes, or by takyng of colde in the same, and so stoppe and cludder the mylke, or for because she lacketh such thyn- ges the which myght engender mylke, other by ouermuch fastyng, hunger & thurst, the which causes muste be well conydered: and then ac- cordyng to that, minister a remedye.

Thynge which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Lette her vse to eate Parsnyp, eyther the seede or the roote: also the seede or roote of fe- nyll, sodden in the broth made with Barley or Cicercula, let her eate of that with other meates that she feedeth on.

Item, to eat sheepes brestes and the mylke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dissolue it in warme whyte wyne, the whiche let the Nurse drynke.

Item, boryng vnder the brestes doth well, without scarification.

Item a plaster for the same of frankensence, Masticke, and pitche, layde to the brestes, or vnder the brestes, the skynne fyrste beyng annoynted with oyle, least it shoulde cleaue ouer fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe verye good to rubbe softly with the hande the brestes, or els in bathyng after dynner or supper, to cause some to sucke her breste.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or of violetttes, and myngle with it Musk, Ensence,
and

and *Laudanum*, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of woll, and clap it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item walhe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the which is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, Violettes, and *Xiloaloes*. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, and *Cardamomum*, and also the yolke of an egge.

Item it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also potage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fine flowre, tempered with Milke & Suger, puttyng to it also a quantitie of Fenell seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item take of Annis seede, of *Siler montanum*, of eche three drams, of Christall beaten to powder two drams, and as much of Suger, geue her this to drynke about ten dayes, at moornyng, eue nyng, and mydday.

Item take of Fenell seede, or the leaues, and of Hozehounde, of eche two handfuls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Safron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter thre ounces, and seeth all these in sufficient water, makynge hereof a plaster, and the same plaster whilest it is hoate, lay it to the Purses brest.

Item take of Cummin seede an ounce and an halfe, & of clarified Hony thre ounces, seeth it in fiue pyntes of water altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seeth to the third part, and

The chyldre Booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse oftentimes to drynke.

Item take of Beetes wel washed one ounce, of Cummin halfe an ounce, of Honye sixe ounces : of these mingled and tempered together, make an electuary, of the whiche let her take both in the moznyng and euenyng, at eche time a sponefull.

Item take two drams of Crystall beaten into fyne powder, and deuyde that in foure equall partes : one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made epyther of Cicer, oz elles of peason.

Also all these thynges folowynge, encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes : Annis and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Hozehounde, *Cardamomum*, freshe Chese, wortes made of olde Chese, Cicer, Cristall beaten to powder and taken with Hony, Lettuse, fenel, wine in which Rosemary oz Sauery be sodden.

Companiing
with men coz
rupteth the
Nurses milke

Item to abstayne from venery oz mans company, for if she vse that, it shall spende and consume the Mylke, and make it vn-sauery and vn-hollsome, neyther can the chyld well broke it, but most commonly shall cast it by agayne, because it cannot digest it.

Also it shalbe best that the chyld sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is bozne, but rather of some other womannes, for a day oz two, for because that the creme (as they call it) straight after the byrth, the first day

in all women doth thicken and congeale.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer sore lared, or that she be ouer bounde, so that she take anye medicines to remedye it: then let another geue the chylde sucke whylest she bee recouered agayne. And when the chylde is layde in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste through ouer much rockyng and styrrynge, the chylde's stomacke turne, and the Mylke there corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseyth to geue the chylde sucke two yeares: howe be it amonge vs mooste commonly, they sucke but one yeare. And when ye wyll weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a little and lyttle, and to make for it lyttle pylls of bread and Suger to eate, and accustome it so, tyll it be able to eate all maner of meate: and this shall suffyse for the education and byngynge by of infantes at this tyme. Notwithstandynge dyuers other thynges here are leste vnspoken of, another tyme God wyll yuge we shall declare them at large.

Howe long the chylde should sucke.

Of dyuers diseases and infirmities which chaunce to chyldezen lately borne, and the remedies therefoze. Cap. iiii.



Although there be in maner infinite diseases which happen the Infantes, as wyrteth Hypocrates, Galenus, Or Rasis,

Many diseases of Infantes.

The second Booke.

Rasis, Auicenna, and diuers other: yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here only suche of them whiche moſte commonly happen to the ſame, & that be theſe: exulceration of the gummes, ſtice of the belly, or ouermuch looſenes of the ſame, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the coughe and diſtillation of the head, ſhorſe wyndnes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clyppping of the mouth, apoſtume in the eares, apoſtume in the brayne, ſwellyng and bolnyng of the eyes, ſkumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, knawying in the bellye, the body ſwellyng and puffed vp, often ſneelyng, wheales or bladders of the body, ſwellyng of the coddies, ſwelling of the nauyl, vnſleepyneſſe, yering, appetite to parbreake, fearefulneſſe in the dreames, the mother, iſſuyng out of the fundament gutte, wormes in the belly, chaufyng, the fallying ſickneſſe, the conſumption, the pallye, trembling of the partes of the body, the ſtone, goggle eyes.

Howe

The thirde booke. Fol. Ciii.

* Howe to cure and to remedy all these, now
will I shewe in order.

First in exulceration of the gummes, are wont certayne pusses and as it were wheales, to growe on the gummes, or in the corners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to much greouance, and to remedye this, it shalbe good that ye with your finger, rubbe the infantes gummes and the pusses or wheelkes withall, and then to annoynt the same gummes with oyntment made of Hens grese, Hares or Conyes brayne, oyle of Camomell mixt with Hony, then take water, and in it seeth Camomell and Dyll, the whiche water beyng hoate, powre it on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote aboue the head.

C Of the fluxe and overmuch loosenes
of the belly.

Or this take the seede of Roses, Comin, Annise, and the seede of Smallage, beate all these together and make them plasterwise, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

And farther, if that it whiche the infant boydeth be of redde or yelowe colour, then geue it to drinke of the sirope of Roses, or of Crabbes, other els of Pomegranates, tempered with a little Mynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorrell, and beate it, then temper it together with the youlke of a

The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the childe to eate, or els take of the same seede brused fyrt, and then seeth it in fayre running water, thereof let the chylde drinke two or thzee tymes the day.

Item, take a gall, and beate it to pouder, then seeth it in water, with this water, temper Barlye meale, or the meale of *Mellium*, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes belly.

Item, yf that that commeth from the chylde, be whytyshe, then take of Nutmegges the weight of a peny, and of whyte frankencense a scruple, or the weyght of two pence, the whiche temper with the iuyce of a Quince, and geue it to the chylde to drinke.

Item, take the meale of Barley, temper it with the iuyce of Plantayne, and a little Vineger, and make it plasterwyle, and laye it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrt a lyttle boyled together ouer the fyze.

Item, take the iuyce of *Centinodion*, and the whyte of an egge, and temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dzyed red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Masticke, Frankencense, Bole armeniake, *Sanguis Draconis*, and the rindes of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrt warmed ouer the fyze) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to walthe the chylde with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce of

of Plantane the moze and the lesse, and in this put clay of an olde furnise oz Duen, and make of it a plaster, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

To vnloose the chyldre beyng bounde.

If the chyldre be so bounde, that it can not long time haue any scoole, then make a suppositarie of Hony sodden till it be hard and massye, and let the suppositary be of the length of your lyttle finger, and the bignesse of two wheate strawes bounde together, then dippe it into oyle, and conuey it into the chyldes fundament.

Item, lyke wyse ye may make a suppositary of the stalke and the roote of Beates, oz els of the roote called Dresse oz flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie before spoken, and conuayed into the sitting place of the childe.

Item, to geue to the Infant as much Hony, as a pease to drinke, and to rubbe the belly a litle, and to souple it with a peece of wooll dipped in oyle, oz dipped in Bulles gall, and layde to the Nauell.

Item, ye may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine whiche hath vertue to vnbynde and loose, and the next day after let the chyldre sucke her, and it wyll loose also the chyldre.

Item, take of small Malloves, of great Malloves of eche an handfull, of fenegreke & Lineseede of ech an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, of figges the number of .x. seeth all these together in water, and then stampe them in a mortar, and

The thirde booke.

put vnto it of Butter and of Hennes grese of eche two ounces, and of Safran one scruple, and make a paster of it vppon a linnen cloth, of the thicknes of a straw, and lay it to the chyldes belly, a day and a nyght.

If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes, Cicotrine one dram, of *Eleborus* both *niger* and *albus*, of eche .xv. graynes, beate these to powder, then temper them with thre sponesfuls of the iuyce of Malwort, or of Dre gall, in this licour dippe woll, and laye it to the Nauell the bredth of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwort and of Mill meale, & seeth those together, tyll they be thicke, then make a plaster therof, and lay it to the belly beneth the Nauell.

C Remedy for the crampe or dissention of the members.

If it chaunce that the infant be taken with the disease called the crampe, the which for the most part commeth of indigestion, and of the weakenes of the powre attractiue, and specially in such chyldzen the which be very fat and moyste, then shall ye annoynt all along the backe of the infante with the oyle of blewe flowredeluce, or els white Lillies, eyther the oyle of Rue.

If the crampe take the childe whylest it stretcheth forth the armes, legges, and other members (as we be wont in gaping or payning) then
let

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the
whiche prime Roses, Couflappes, or the flowres
of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with
the oyle of Violettes, and the oyle of Sweete Al-
mons tempered together, and if the chylde be in
great heate, annoynt him with the oyle of Vio-
lettes, or with oyle Olive, tempered with a little
whyte waxe, and also powre on the childes head
the oyle of violettes.

* Remedy for the coughe and distillation,
or Catarrhes of the head.

Sometymes the chylde is sore en-
combred with the coughe, & with
distillation or running of humours out
of the head, to the nose, the mouth, and
the brest, the which ye shal remedy thus.

First powre warme water on the chyldes
head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the
chyldes head, and so do continually the space of
halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a
little Honye on the chyldes tonge to chawe by-
pon, then put your synger into the chyldes
mouth, and depresse or holde downe the inner-
moste part or the roote of the tongue next to the
throate, to prouoke the chylde to vomyte, and to
boyde the grosse and viscouse humours whiche
be cause of this yll.

Item, take Gumme Arabicke, Gumme Dra-
gagant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Ly-
corise, and Suger penedium, all this beaten to-
gether,

The thirde booke.

gether, geue euery day to the chylde a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke, with Almondes blanchéd, and only the iuyce or water of fenell, whereof when it is well sodden, let the chylde eate or drinke mornyng and euenyng, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the cough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue, and the rooſe of the mouth, then take of the ſeedes of Quinces two ſponefulls, brule them a little, and ſtpe them in warme water the ſpace of two or thre houres, then ſtrayne the viſcouſe & groſſe water from them thzough a ſtrayner, and that remaineth, frye it together in a frying panne with Suger, *Penicium*, and the oyle of ſweete Almons, thereof makyng an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chylde to receyue, yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the ſame electuary, the iuyce of a ſweete Pomegranate.

Item, agaynſt the cough and ouer muche heate, take the ſeede of whyte Popie and Dragagant of eche two drams, of the ſeedes of Cowardes foure drams, and beate all theſe together, and geue at once the weight of foure pence to the childe, with the water in whiche reaſons haue ben ſodden.

Item, take Reaſons, and doynge away the graynes of it, ſeeth them together with water in a frying panne, ſo that they burne not to the bottome of the panne, then take it from the fyre
and

and beate it well in a mortar, temperyng therewithall Suger, *Penidium*, and geue of this in the moornyng and euenyng to the chylde.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a little Myrre beaten to power, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Hony, and the oyle of Sweete Almondes, and of this geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore the Nurse must auoyde all suche thinges, the which may engender cough, as Vineger, ouermuche salted meates, Chese, Nuts, & all Warpe thynges. Also she must annoint the chyldes brest with Butter, and with Dialecthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasons and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a mortar, and to that adde as muche of Suger *Penidium*, with a little oyle of Violettes, and make an electuary of these, and geue to the chylde the mountenaunce of a hasell Nut.

¶ Remedy for short wynde.

Anny tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of brethyng or short windnes, the which to remedy, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the childe with Hony, but if the disease encrease on the childe, and that the winde pipes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and al the places about the eares with oyle Dlyfe, and also the tongue for to prouoke vomite, and then powze a little warme water into the chyldes mouth to washe it withall, & geue to it a little Lineseede tempered with Honye and beaten, made after
the

The thirde booke.

the fashion of an electuary.

Item, yf the chyldre haue besydes this also the Ayr, then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtys, other els Dates sodden with Mylke and flowre.

* Against weales or bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the chyldren wheales and blisters on their tongues and mouth, whiche thynges commeth of the Charpenesse and eagernesse of the Nurses mylke, the mouth and tongne of the infant beyng so tender that the least thyng that toucheth it, shal offende it, wherfore besides that, it is great payne to the chyld, thus to be blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it is also very perillous and daungerous, for such wheales which be not ripe and seeme blacke, betoken death, whiche yf they be whyte or yelowyshe, then they be of lesse peryll.

Agaynst this yll, take violettes and Roses, and seeth them in a little Rose water, and therewith washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Letuse, the ioyce of
Petie

The second booke. Fol. Cxviii.

Petrie mozell, & the iuyce of Purselayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith the whelkes. And yf the foresayde blisters or whelkes bee blackish: then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item yf the same be very moyste, then take Myrre, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them well together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynte the chyldes tounge there with.

Item, take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other elles of vnrype grapes, whiche is called Viergeus, and with that annoynte the tounge.

Item, it is very good to washe the tounge with red wyne, and then to strewe vpon it the powder of Galles, or els of the barke or rine of Frankencense.

Yf ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper: then take Bole armeniake, Psidium, and Sumach, of eche thre drams: also of Galles two drams, of Aloome one dram, all these beate together, and searse them through a searser, and strewe that powder on the blisters.

Item if these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse such thynges which are moyste and colde, and let her chaue in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the which lay on the Infantes mouth and tounge.

Item Amilum or starch tempered together with
Rose

The chyldes Booke.

Rose water, & put on the chyldes tong, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oranges, and do of this on the chyldes tounge in like maner, but yf the wheales or blisters be somewhat yellowy, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselayne. But yf the wheales seme whytish, then take of Myrre and of Saffran, of eche one dram, of Sugar candye two drams, and beate these to powder & lay of it on the wheales and tounge.

¶ Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynnyng of the mouth.

Sometymes by reason of the hardnes of the Purses pappes, the chyldes lippes and mouth be exulcerat, hauyng in maner of cleftes and chinnes in them: and in this case take tozed wooll, and dyp it in the iuyce of Plantaine, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hennes grease, every of them beyng warme, and with this annoynt the mouth and lippes of the chyld.

¶ Of appostumation and runnyng of the eares.



Vhen that humours and matter yssueth out of the eares, which properly commeth of abundant humours in all the bodye, and most specially in the head: then take a peece of wooll, and dyp it in Hony mirte with redde wyne, to the whiche is put also a little quantitie

quantitie of Alome beaten to pouder, or of Safran, then make of the same as it were a tent, and put it in the chyldes eare, & when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynes of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that the whiche commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, and temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the pouder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chyld haue great payne and dolour by wyndnes, ventositie, and the humours in this place: then seeth Origan and Myrthe with oyle Olyfe, and so beyng warme, put of it into the eares.

¶ Of apostumatton in the head.

If there be any apostume engendered in the head, (whiche many tymes chaunseth) the whiche causeth the chekes and eies to be greatly payned, and the eye syght to ware wannyshe or tawnye, then must be applyed such thynges which maye refrigerate and coole the Braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Gowardes, and the iuyce of Myghtshade, iuyce of Purselayne, and temper them with the oyle of Roles, in this dyppe a peece of wooll and lay it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye dyp it agayne.

The second Booke.

¶ Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

Against swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take *Licium*, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chyldes eyes, and bynd it to the place with a fine and soft linnen cloth, then afterward washe the eyes with water in whiche Camomell and Basill haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not redde, nether the browes swollen: then take Myrre, Aloes, Safron, and the leaues of Roses, and temper all these, and stipe them in olde wine, & binde it to the chyldes eyes with some linnen cloth, & into the chylde's nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolued in womans Mylke.

¶ Of the scumme or whyte of the eye.

Against the scum or whyte of the eye, which for the moste part happeneth to chyldren through ouer muche crying and wepyng, take the iuyce of *Solatrium*, and droppe of the same into the chyldes eye, and yf by the same chaunce the bayne of the eyes waxe reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

¶ Against immoderate heate, or the feuer.

If the infante bee in great and behemente heate contrary to nature, the which is called a feuer: fyrste it shalbe the Nurses parte to eate and vse suche thynges the whiche coole and moysten.

Also

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thinges folowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Gourdes, Suger, with a little Camphere mixed herewithall, tempered well together. Item it is very good to prouoke it to sweting.

Item, take of the iuyce of Wormewood, of Plantane, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seeth them a little on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barlye meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chyldes breste. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and mixte them together with this oyntment beyng colde, annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wystes, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dzyed Roses, and powdred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make therof on the fyre a plaster, the whiche laye to the chyldes brest somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chyld is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges, whiche coole: As Letuce, Purlayne, Endiue, Plantayne, and such other.

¶ Against fretting or gnawynge in the belly.

If the chyld be vexed with fretting and gnawynge in the belly, the whiche thing ye shall knowe by the immoderate cryng of the chyld, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great cryng, then shall you take

The thirde booke.

warne water, wherein hath ben sodden La-
uender, Cummin, Fenell seede, or the seede of
Bill, and oyle Olive, tempering them together,
and herein dip a peece of wooll, and therewith
soke the chyldes belly oftentymes.

* Against swelling of the body.



When the chyldes body or any part
therof is swollen & puffed bp, then
take the toppes of Elder tree, and of
Walwort, and seeth them in whyte
wyne, and therein lay the Infant,
specially yf it be not taken with ouer great
heate, but yf so be that with swelling in the
head the belly be swollen also, thē take Myrre,
Aloes epaticke, and Saffron, and beate them al-
together, and temper them with the iuyce of
Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

* Agaynst often sneesing.

Sometimes the Infantes be sore troubled
and vexed with often sternutation and
sneesing, whiche thing yf it come of the
apostume in the head, then shal ye minister such
thynges to the head, whiche refrigerate and
coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces
of the hearbes, or other thinges. If this come
of any other cause then of apostume, then take
Baspill be it greene or dry, and put of the iuyce
or powder of it into the chyldes nose. But yf
this sneesing come and begin with heate, and
that the chyldes eyes seme as they grewe in-
warde for payne therof, then lay to the childes
head

head the leaues of Purslayne, or Cowarde cut in thinne slyces and tempered with the oyle of Roses and Barlye meale, and also the youlke of an egge.

* Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

These whelkes if they appeare blacke vpon the body, they signifie perill of life, and so muche the more, the greater quantitie that there is of them: but yf they seeme whytyshe or reddishe, it is no perill, and may easily be cured. wherfore take the leaues of the red Rose, the leaues of Mirtils, and of *Tamariscus*, and seeth these in water, and in that water, wet a linnen cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lyke wyle it is good to annoynt the same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtilles, and *Tamariscus*. If the whelkes be whyte or reddishe, then let them be ripe before ye minister any thing to them, and when they be open and begun to matery, then to clense, purifie, and to dry them beyng ripe and broken. It is verye good to wash the same whelkes with *Mullum* or *Hydromell*, in which Saltpeter is dissolved. *Mullum* and *Hydromell* is, water and Honye sodden together.

* Against swelling of the coddex.

Anny tymes chaunseth to chyldren (thorowe ouermuch crying) swelling about the coddex, and sometymes burstnesse,

The thirde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling sometymes cometh by inflammation or great heate, and sometyme with onlye wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddess will sometymes appeare so styffe as a tabour, and thynne as it were an horne. The remedy for this, is to take a quart of double Beere woort, and therein seeth of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue, a quarter of an handfull, of Fenell, Dyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull, cut and broose all these herbes together, and seeth them from the quart to the pinte, the strayne them stronglye from the liquer, in the whiche liquer, seeth so much beaneflowze as may serue to make a plaster, thereto addyng at the latter ende, two or thre sponefulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddess. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, such as I haue oftentimes spoken of before.

¶ Against swelling of the Pauell.

Also sometymes the chyldes Pauell swelleth, and specially straight after the byrth when it is cut. For this, take Spike celytyke, and seeth it in the oyle of Almondess, myxed with a little Turpentine, then in this dyppe wooll, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of ouermuche crying, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of
fayre

sayze olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, and temper these with red wyne, & then in this dyp a peece of towe, and lay it to the Hauyll.

* Agaynst vnslleepynesse.

Against vnslleepynesse, that is, when the child is destitute and wanteth his due and naturall rest, all the whyle crying and weeping. For this take two heades (with the seedes therein conteyned) of whyte Poppe, and with one sponefull of Rose water, & thre or foure dropes of Vineger, stampe them in a mortall reasonably, then adde thereto two sponefulles of womans mylke, and the waight of an halfpenny of Saffron, with halfe a sponefull of Barlye flowre, the which yet stampe a little together agayne, and then laye it in a fine thinne double linnen cloth, and applie it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a little of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnslleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurles mylke (as many tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of Violettes, and put vnto it a little quantitie of Vineger, and of this liquour droppz oftentymes into the chyldes nolethrylles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, and temper it with the iuyce of Letuse, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, and farther, see that the Nurles mylke may be amended.

¶ Agaynst yeryng oz the hycate.

His yeryng commeth either of colde-
nesse of the stomacke, other els of
ouermuche fulnesse, oz for lacke of
meate and emptynes of the stomake
oz els by some hotte and colericke
qualitie bytyng bypon the mouth of the sto-
macke.

As often as it commeth by the aboundaunce
of meate, and fulnesse, the remedie is to pro-
uoke it to vomite. If by coldenesse of the sto-
macke, then annoynt the stomacke with the oyle
of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomacke
a plaster made of the seede of Dyll, beaten and
tempered with the iuyce of Myntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate oz colericke
qualitie, then take the oyle of Violettes, oz of
Roses, the iuyce of Endiue, oz of any other
such hearbes the which haue power to infrigi-
date and coole, and temper the same with wo-
mans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyl-
des stomacke.

And when it proceadeth by defecte and lacke
of meate, oz emptinesse of the stomacke, then
geue to the chylde to feede bypon mylke, & other
good holosome thynges to suppe, neyther passe
not greatly though the chylde reiecte and vomit
by agayne that the whiche it receyueth, for so
much euer wyl remayne in the stomacke that
shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to
noyze it.

The thyrde Booke. Fol. Cxiii.

¶ Agaynst often parbreaking by weaknesse and
feeblesse of the stomacke.



Gainst ouermuch parbreaking, beate
foure graynes of Cloues, and geue it
to the chylde to drynke with foure or
fyue sponefulles of red wine.

Item, take of Masticke, whyte
frankensence, and the leaues of the red Rose,
so much as shalbe sufficient, & all these beaten
together, temper them with the iuyce of Myn-
tes, and make a plaster of it, laying it to the
chylde's stomacke. But yf the chylde's vomiting
be very behement, then put vnto these foresayde
thynges a quantitie of Rose vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hot in
an oven, or els in a frying panne ouer the fyre
tyll it waxe browne, then beate it to powder a-
gayne, puttyng it into vineger, and to these ad
the yolke of an egge harde rosted, Masticke,
frankencense, and Gumme Arabicke, and tem-
per all these with the iuyce of Myntes, makynge
of it a plaster, the whiche laye to the chylde's sto-
macke, and to the chylde's mouth and nose holde
a warme tosse of breade.

Causes of this yll be thre. The first, yf the
chylde haue taken more mylke then it is able to
concocte and digest. The secoude, yf the Nur-
ses mylke be ouer thynne, waterishe, and fluishe.
The thyrde, yf the same mylke be impure, fe-
culent, and corrupte. These causes prouoke vo-
mite, and specialllye yf the chylde also haue a

The chyldre Booke.

weake and wateryſhe ſtomacke : wherefoze ye muſt helpe the Infant after this maner.

Fyſt let the chyld ſucke leſſe then it dyd befoze, and then alſo marke that which the chyld doeth perbrake, whether it ſauer ſharply lyke binegre, or that it be whytyſhe. For yf it be ſo: then take of white Frankenſence, viii. graines, of dzyed Rue. xx. graines: beate theſe to powder, and geue it to the chyld to dzyne, with the ſtrope of red Roſes.

Or els let the Nurſe chawe Cymmin, and ſo put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue alſo of the ſzyrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chyld.

Take Maſtiche, *Accatia*, *Xilaloos*, Galles, whyte Frankenſence, toſted bread, of eche lyke much, beate them together, puttyng to of red Roſes, and temperyng it with the conſerue of Roſes, and lay it to the chyldes ſtomacke.

But yf it ſo be that the perbrakyng of the chyld ſauer not after the faſhion of winegre, but after ſome other ſowze ſauer, and that it be not whytyſh, but pale or yelowyſhe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, and lay this plaſter vnto the chyldes ſtomacke. Take Barlye meale, wylde Mulberries, and *Psidium*, beate all theſe together, and temper it with Roſe water and lay it to the chyldes ſtomacke.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes ſtomacke be ſomewhat wateryſhe, and ſlowe in digeſtion, then annoynte it with the water of Roſes, in the which Muſke hath ben diſolued, or els the water

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the iurce of Quinces, with a little Cloues and Sugar, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith tempered and mixed.

* Agaynst fearefull and terrible dreames.

Also sometyme the chylzen be vexed and vnquieted with fearefull and terrible dreames in theyr sleepe, whiche thyng for the most part commeth of the aboundance of foode, and ouermuch meate or drynkes, whiche for the copie and superfluitie thereof, can not be conuicte ne ouercome of nature, wherfore necessarily it putrifieth and corrupteth, the noysome and hydyous vapours wherof, flying by to the head in time of slepe, causeth these terrible fantasies in the slepe. And thus may it be remedied. If ye take heede that ye lay not the chylde to slepe strayght after it hath fedde, and also let it lycke a little hony, swallowyng it downe, so that by it, such thinges the which be somewhat harde to digest and concocte, may the sooner be digested, and the refuse the more easly to descende into the guttes.

Item euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram of the electuary called *Diamuscum* or *Diaplicis*. Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with mylke, as saith Rasis.

* Agaynst issuing forth of the fundement gutte.

The issuing forth of this gut, when the chylde laboureth to ease it selfe: Take Mirtylles, Acozne cuppes, red Roses dried, burne

The thyrde Booke.

burnt Hartes hornes, burnt Alome, Goates hoofe, *Balaustium*, and Galles, of eche lyke muche, and seeth all these together with water, so long tyll the water haue receaued the strength of the ingredience, & with this water, beyng warme, washe the gut, and so conuey it into the body agayne, as I taught you in the seconde booke.

¶ Agaynst Tenasmus.



Enasmus is a disease when the child enforceth it self to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, the whiche thyng oftentimes chaunceth to chyldren, most commonlye proceeding of colde. Agaynste the which, ye shall vse these remedies. Take garden Cresses and Cummin seede, of eche lyke muche, beate them together, and temper them with old butter, and geue it to drynke to the chylde with colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, and laye of it bypon coales, whose fume let the chylde receaue beneath in the fundement, the fume beyng inclosed rounde about with clothes.

Item take Tarre, and lyke wyse make fume of it, receyuyng the fume as befoze.

¶ Agaynst wormes in the belly.

Sometymes there bzeede wormes in the guttes, of the byggenesse and quantitie of such as are wont to be in olde Cheese, called Mites, and some lyke lyce. And sometime in the belly be engendzed wormes, of the byggenesse

nesse of earth wormes, called Cases. Agaynst these vse this remedie. Take the water of *Centummodia*, and geue it to the chylde to dzyne with mylke.

Item take of whyte Corall, the scrapynge of Iuery, of Hartes horne burnt, and of Treos, of eche a scruple, of Sugar candy one ounce and an halfe, of the water of *Centummodia*, so muche as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, & of this make suppositaries, ministring to the chylde euery daye the wayght of two drammes.

Other wyse accordyng to Rasis mynde: Take of Cummin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Ore gall, making thereof a plaster, the which ye shall laye to the Infantes Naupll.

Item oyle Olyse taken and dronken a small quantitie therof, is very good to kyll all maner of wormes which breede in the gutte, neare to the fundement. Take the finest cotton, & therof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt with the oyle of Wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kynelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almond, and so to conuey it into the chyldes syttyng place.

Item it shall greatly profyte the chylde, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden Wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntment for the same. Take of Wormewood & of Lupines, of ech two dramms, of

The chyilde Booke.

Siler montanum, Cummin, Cockle, Centorie, and *Centonicum*, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, all these thynges beaten together, tempze them in the oyle of Wormewood, oz of bytter Almons the waight of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of waxe, and make hereof an oyntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fyze, oz in some warme place.

Item take of Cockle two drammes, of wormewood and Wallicke of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of *Coriander preparat*, .vi. drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rye meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder .vi. drammes, of Saffron two drammes, temper all these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, oz of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Nauyll the breadth of a hande.

Item, geue the chyld the wayght of foure pence of the powder of *Aloes cicotrine*, with fayze water fyrst sodden and sweeted with Suger, oz els with single beare, and this no doubt is so- ueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long wormes. Take of the iuyce of Wormewood, and of Dre gall, of both two ounces, of *Colocintbis* .viii. drammes, temper all these well together, addyng to it a little wheaten meale, and make hereof a plaster, the whiche laye to the Nauyll of the chyld.

Item

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxvi.

* Item a bathe for the same.

Take Wormewood and Saules, and seeth them in water, and let the chylde be bathed in it vj to the Hauell.

¶ Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

Against gallyng or chaufyng of the chylde's skin, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpenes of brine or sweat: Take Mirtils and beate them to powder, and strewe therof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Cyprus, of *Iragacantum*, so muche as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, and strewe of the powder on the chaufed place.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte frankencense one dramme, and melt these together, and then take. viii. graynes of Camphere dissolved in Rose water and myrte therewithall, and of al this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall.

Also *Vnguentum album*, and *Vnguentum rubrum* be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherin Plantaine, knot grasse, dock rootes, or *Bursa pastoris* is sodden, is very good for the same.

* Of the fallyng sicknes.

Sometymes these Infantes be vexed and encombred with the fallyng sicknes, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that
it

it hath this disease strayght forth with the
byrth: Cause of the whiche, is colde and yll hu-
mours in the head and braynes. Another is,
that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by
some accidentall causes, in whiche case, yf it
leave not the childe, being a man chylde, before
he be. xrb. yere of age, and the woman chylde,
about the tyme of hauyng her fyrst flowres, yf
it forsake them not in this space, neither by the
myght of nature, neyther of medicines, then is
it lyke nener to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this disease come not by nature,
but by some accidentall cause afterwarde, then
geue diligent heede that the Nurses mylke be
very good, and conuenient to the chyldes na-
ture. And for the same purpose, if necessitie re-
quire it,shalbe very goodd to purge and clense
the Nurses body with due & meete medicines,
and she must alsoyde al such thinges the which
do coole and moysten, and to suffer the chylde
to receyue no more mylke at once, then it may
be able well to digest.

For falling
sickness

Take muske

as is sayd

it in water

with sugar

for drynes

and make

a plaster

with honey

Against this cruell disease, aucthours much
commende the roote of a Pionie, onely hanged
about the chyldes necke.

Item, the same roote dzyed and beaten to
powder, and so oftentymes geuen to the chylde
to take, sometymes with drinke, sometymes
with potage, pap, or milke, or any other wayes.
Likewise the seede of Pionie is very good.

Farthermore powze nowe and then into the
chyldes nosethryls of oyle of Castoreum, or the oyle

of
and bind to the head

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxvii.

of *Castoreum*, or of *Enferbium*: Also let the chylde smell to Rue and to *Asa fetida*.

Item, to hange *Viscum quersimum*, which is gathered in Marche the moone decreasyng, about the chylde's necke, is very good. Dyuers other thynges there be which myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this time.

C Consumption or pynnyng away of the body.

When the Infant falleth away, and the fleche rebateth, remainyng nothing but as it were skin and bone, and therby the chylde waxeth sicklye: Then let the Infant be often bathed in water, in which hath ben sodden the head and the feete of a weather, so long till the fleche part from the bones of his owne accorde, and euery tyme that the chylde commeth forth of the bath, fyrst let it be wyped & dyped cleane, and then annoynte it with this oyntment. Take freshe Butter, oyle of Violettes, and oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe Pork, halfe an ounce, of whyte ware two drammes, melt all these thynges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoynting therwith the chylde's body.

Item, take white ware, Swines grese, Shepes tallowe, freshe Butter, melt all these thynges together and strayne them, makyng of it an oyntment, and annoynt the childe withal once or twyse euery daye.

of

The thirde booke.

of restauration, muste be in lyght, restorative
and pure nourishing meates.

* Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauynesse
of the chyldes body.

Sometimes it chaunseth that the chyldes
members of the bodye be so feeble, as
though it had the paulsey, so that with
that partes of the body the childe can not helpe
it selfe, neither can it lift by the handes, armes,
ne stande on the feete. If the chylde haue this
disease whylest it sucketh, then let the Nurse
be comforted and strengthened with such thin-
ges, the which haue vertue to heate and to dry.
Also let the Nurse feede only on rosted or fryed
meates, and that she forbear from milke, fishe,
and harde or salt powdered fleshe, for commonly
this disease springeth of colde and moyste hu-
mours, besieging the sinewes.

If farthermore, let not the Nurse vse any wa-
tered wine, or mixed, but mere and in his owne
kynde, and let her bathe the chylde euer before
she geue it sucke, after, annoynting it with the
oyle of *Castorium*, or the oyle of *Costum*, and let the
chylde drinke every day a quantitie of this elec-
tuary folowynge.

Take garden Mynt, Cinamome, Cummin,
dye Roses, Mastick, Fenugreke, Valeriane, Amios,
Coronicum, *Zedoarium*, Cloues, Saunders, *Xiloa*, oes, of
eche a dram, of Huske halfe a dram, beate all
those to powder, and confict them with clari-
fied and depured honye, making thereof an
electuary,

The thyrde Booke. Fol. Cxviii.

electuarie, of the which euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with whyte wyne. If the chylde haue this disease in euery part of his body, then take an ounce of waxe and a dramme of *Euforbium*, the which *Euforbium* ye shall beate in a mortar with v. oz. vi. dropes of oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fyre, addyng thervnto so much oyle as maye be sufficient to make a searecloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

* Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsy.

If the chylde happen to be vexed with tremblyng or shakynge of the body or the partes therof, so that ye feare the palsy of the same part, or that the falling sicknes shoulde ensue, then remedie it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spynkenarde, and temper them together, warmyng it, and therewith annoynt the backe or raynes, and the other shakynge members, ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bathe the chylde in the decoction of Rosemary, Sage, Tyme, Ilope, Satiery, Alexander, Smallege. &c. is very soueraigne. If you cannot cure it by thys meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the Physitions.

The thyrd Booke.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stoppyng
of the brine.

Strangury, Dislury, and the difficultie in
making of water, oftentimes chaunce-
eth to chylde by reason of the stone, or
aboundaunce of grauell, other els many times
of some other viscos, slympe, and fleumatyke
matter, in maner & fourme of dregges or ragges
ouerthwartynge and crossing the passage, wher-
by the brine should passe forth, in such wise, that
(without great payne) the chylde can not make
his water, and that yet but in small quantitie
at once.

Whiche of these wayes so euer it come, it shall
be very good to bathe the chylde by to the Na-
uyll in the decoction of paritorie of the wall,
Mallowes, Holyoke, Lyneseede, Lylly rotes,
Fenegreke, & Sauery, other els with a sponge
or double linnen cloth dypped therein, estones
to foment the shere and nether part of the belly
agaynst the bladder.

But in men chylde chiefly foment them
on the straighes, betwene the fundement and
the coddes, the whiche place in Latin is called
Perineum, for there in them lyeth the necke of the
bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation,
dye the places fomented, and whylest they be
yet redde with bathyng, annoynt them with the
oyle of scorpions, to be had at the Apothecaries,
or els the oyle called *Petroleum*.

And yf farther nede shall require it, ye maye
applie

applie this plaster folowynge to the foresayde places. Take of Parsley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Paritozie, Wallowes, Holyoke rotes, of eche an handfull, seeth these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll suche tyme as they be softe, then powze out the ale from them, and stampe the hearbes in a stone mortar, addyng therunto of the seedes of ffene greke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lykewyse to fine powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, *Petroleum*, or other appertyffe oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these well commixed together, make a plaster, and laye to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administrated in wardes, it is but follye, for so much as it is so harde to cause a chyld to take any thyng within forth.

This difficultie in makynge water, maye ensue by other meanes, whereof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

¶ Of goggle eyes or loking a squint.

If the chyld haue goggle eyes, or that it loke a squynt, then firste set the cradell in suche a place that the lyght maye come directly and ryght in the chyldes face, neyther in the one side, neither in the other, neither aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on which side that the eyes do goggle, and let the lyghte come vnto it on the

133. The thyrde Booke.

contrary syde, so to retorne the syght. And in the nyght sealon set a candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of diuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the colour of lyght greene, or yelowe, for the chylde shall haue pleasure to beholde these straunge colours. And in returning the eye syght towarde such thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, of the diseales of children after they be borne, makyng here an ende of this thirde booke for this tyme.

The fourth booke. fol. Cxx.

Of such thynges the whiche shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke.

Capit. L.

BEre in this fourth booke (by the leaue of God) shall briefly be declared suche thynges whiche may farther or hynder the conception of man, whiche as it may be by dyuers meanes letted and hindered, so also by many other wayes, it may be farthered and amended. Also to know by certayne signes and tokens, whether the woman be conceived or no, and whether the conception be male or female, and finally certayne remedies and medicines to farther and helpe conception, and thereafter we will (accordyng to our promyse in the Prologue) set forth certayne bellifyping receptes, and so make an ende of this whole treatise.

§ 3 Of

The fourth booke.

* Of conception, and howe many wayes it may
be hindred or letted. Cap. ii.

Here is nothing vnder heauen whi-
che so manyfesi and playnely doth
declare and shewe the magnificent
mightines of the omnipotent li-
uing God, as doth the perpetuall
and continuall generation and conception of
lyuyng thinges here in earth, by the whiche is
saued, prozaged, and augmented the kynde of
all thinges. And where that this almightie
Lord and creature hath so institute and ordai-
ned, that no singular thing in it selfe (here vpon
the earth) shoulde continuallye remayne
and abyde, yet hath he geuen from the begin-
ning and instinced suche a power and vertue
vnto these mortall creatures, that they may en-
gender and produce other lyke thynges vnto
themselfe, and vnto their owne similitude, in
the which alway is saued the seede of posteritie.
were not this prouision had by almightie god,
the nature and kynde of all maner of thynges
woulde soone perishe and come to an ende, the
whiche vertue and power of generation many
times doth halt and misse, by defect and the con-
trary disposition in the partes generant.

As ye may euidently see in the sowyng of
corne and all other maner of seede, so that there
be in all maner of generation thre principall
partes concurrent to the same, the sower, the
seede sown, and the receptacle or place recey-
uyng

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxi.

nyng and contaynyng the seede. If there be faulte in any of these thre, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto suche tyme as the faulte be remoued or amended.

The earth vnto all seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contaynyng, chipping and embrasing them in her wombe, feedyng and fostering them as the Mother doth the chylde in her bellye or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto theyr nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceyued in the bowels of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer waterythe, dankithe, or ouer hoate and dry, or els full of stones, grauell, or other rubbish, or ful of yll wedes, which may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng, also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyle viciate and corrupted, and so the life and spirite of it banished away and destroyed. The sower may vnrordinately strewe and caste the seede on the earth, &c. So that yf there be let in none of these thre partes concurrent to generation, or that the lettes be remoued and done awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplication and encreasement of that kynde, of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almightie God hath enplanted and set in the kynde of all thinges.

The fourth booke.

¶ How many wayes conception may be letted,
and howe the causes may be knowen.

Capit. iii.

Every thyng then the whiche doth encrease in this kinde, must first be conceyued in the wombe and Matrix of the Mother, whiche is apte and conuenient for the receate of such seede. And as I sayde before, as there may be defect and lacke in the Mother receyuyng the seede, so may there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the seede it selfe also.

And in woman there may be foure generall causes, by the whiche the conception may be impedit and let, ouer muche caliditie or heate of the Matrix, ouermuch coldnes, ouermuch humiditie or moystnes, and ouermuch drynes. Any of these foure qualities exceedyng temperancie, may be sufficient causes to let due conception.

Wherfore the ryght excellent Phisition *Hipocrates* in the. b. booke of his *Amphorismes* saith: All suche women the whiche haue colde and dense Matrices, cannot conceyue, and suche as haue moyste and waterye Matrices can conceyue, for the powre of the seede is extinguished in it. Also hauing dry Matrices, conceyue not, for the seede perymeth for lacke of due nutriment and foode, but that Matrix the whiche hath all these qualities in temperauncie, that is fruitefull. This is *Hipocrates* saying, the which thing

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxii.

thyng also may be well perceyued by a familiar example of the sowynge of corne.

For yf it be sowen in ouer colde places, such as be in the partes of a countrey, called Sitchia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall snowe or froste, or where the Sunne doth not wyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowen, wyl neuer come to profite, nor fructifie, but through the behement coldnesse of the place, in the which it is conceyued, the lyfe and quickenes of the grayne is vtterly destroyed and annihilate.

And farther as concernyng ouer muche humiditie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or marishe and waterie ground, the seede wyl perishe through the ouer muche aboundaunce of water, whiche extinguissheth the liuelynes and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Likewise yf it be sowen in suche a countrey or place where is ouer great heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yere be so dry, that there come no rayne at all to alay the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne, then shall the seede sowen wyther and dze awaye, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

Also yf it be sowen in dze places, where neuer commeth rayne, or on the sande, and grauely places, in suche a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceyued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore yf the Matrix be distempered, by
the

The fourth booke.

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it agayne to temperauncie, by suche remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man, as yf the seede be ouer hotte, the whiche the woman shall feele as it were burnyng hot, or to colde, the whiche she shall feele as it were in maner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne. &c. Diuers other wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not nede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceyue, the cause commyng of ouermuch frigiditie or coldnesse in the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these tokens. She shall feele great colde about the sydes, the raynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her brine shall appeare whyte and thynnysh, and sometimes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thinges shall noy her, hotte thynges shall greatly comfort her.

But if it come by ouermuche humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these signes. If the body of her be of a fat and grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the beginning and the latter ende of them certayne viscos and watery substaunce, and that her brine be whyte, thicke, and sometyme as it were mylke. Also that she feele great colde and payne about the Matrix and priuie partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the raynes of her backe.

And when ouermuch heate or dryeth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception,

tion, then is the byrne hye coloured, red or yelowe, beyng thinne, with certayne motes appearing in the water, the woman hath great thyrst, and bytter rylsng or belchynges out of the stomacke into the mouth. And many times they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all theyr body, hauyng also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng may happen eyther by ouer much watche, or ouer much fastyng, labour, trauayle, sorowe, sicknesse, &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardly be brought to a temperancie agayne, and be made apte to conceyue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his excesse causeth sterilitie. Nowe wyll we shewe howe it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and howe to knowe whether the woman be conceiued or no, according to the minde of right experte Physicians.

* Howe to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceyued whether she be conceyued or no. Cap. liiii.



If ye be desirous to know whether the man or the woman be hinderance in conception; Let eche of them take of wheate

The fourth booke.

Wheate and Barlye cornes, and of Beanes of eche. vii. the which they shall suffer to be steeped in theyr seuerall brine the space of. xiiii. houres then take two pottes, suche as they set Gyliflowres in, fill them with good earth, and in the one let be set the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the other the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped in the womans water, and euery moorning the space of. viii. or. x. dayes, let eche of them with theyr proper brine, water the said seedes sowed in the foresayde pottes, and marke whose potte doth proue, and the seedes therein contayned doth growe, in that partie is not the lacke of conception, and see that there come no other water or rayne on the pottes, but trust not much this farre set experiment.

Item, accoꝝdyng to *Hipocrates* wytyng, yf ye wyll knowe whether the faulte be in the woman or no, then let the woman receyue into her body vnderneath, beyng well and closely closed rounde about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as *Laudanum*, *Storax calamite*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Muske*, *Ambze*, and such other, and yf the odour and sauour of such thynges ascende thoroꝝwe her body by vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande, that sterilitie commeth not of the womans part, yf not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf she take Garlicke beyng pilled out of the huskes, and conuay of it into the priuie partes, and yf the sent of it ascende byppe thoroꝝwe the body vnto the nose, the woman is faultlesse,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxiii.

fautlesse: yf not, then is ther lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and apperaunce, yet be they not alwayes infallible, but only lykely.

Whether she be conceaued alreedy or no, ye shall knowe by these signes. First, the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but were lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begyn to ware rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be, the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwyle then she was vled to do befoze that tyme. Also her brine wareth spylle and thychylye by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matrix very fastlye and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of a needle maye scace enter.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceaued or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the .v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of *Mellicratum* to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feele great payne, gnawynge, and tumblyng in her bellye, then be ye sure that she is conceaued. This *Mellicratum* is a drynke, made of one part wyne, another part water, sodden together, with a quantitie of hony.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nayle
of

To knowe
wheter the
woman be
conceaued,
or no.


ap. h. =

The fourth Booke.

of one of her fyngers, and yf the Mylke flewe and sprede abroad vpon it by and by, then is it a woman chylde, but yf the drop of Mylke continue and stande still vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a signe of a man chylde.

Item if it be a male, then shall the woman with childe be wel colored, and lyght in going, her belly round, bigger toward the rightside, then the left (for commonly the man chylde lieth in the ryghte side, the woman in the lefte side) and in the time of her bearing she shall better digest and lyke her meate, her stomacke nothing so queasy ne feeble.

¶ Of certayne remedies and medicines which may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.

A sterilitie then for the most part ensueth & cometh of the distemperauncie of one of these foure fozenamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the same when it chaunceth, must be done by such thinges the which haue contrary power and operation to the excessiue qualitie, for by that shall it be reduced to his temperauncie agayne.

As yf that coldnesse and moistnesse excedding temperauncie in the Matrix be occasion of sterilitie, then must she applye suche thynges to that place the which be of nature hot and drie, the whiche maye califie and warme the place, and also drie by the yll moistnes and humours

conteyned in the same, hyndering conception.

And for because that the mosse generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceade of cold, waterythe, and flegmaticke humours, whiche bedewyng the inner sydes and holonesse of the Matrix, with the port and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrix, can not there remayne ne cleave, neither is the mouth or port of the wombe apte or able to close it selfe sufficiently after the reception of the seede, the flewme and slimie humours withstandyng it, the which vnlesse they be discussed, or dzyed away, the seede alwaye slippeth and sydeth forth as fast as it entreth in.

Wherfore to remedie and to do away the foresayde impediment, ye shall vse the meanes whiche foloweth.

Fyrste, within a day or two after the womans Termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Physition take a purgation, which may purge flewme and wateryshenes, and then the next or the thirde day after, let her lye in a bath by almost to the Nauyll, in the whiche bath ye shall decocte and seeth these hearbes folowynge. Take of Bay leaues, Mallo wes, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomell, Maioran, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage thre handfulls, of Mercurie and Brankursin of eche two handfulls, seeth all these hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water and the other halfe redde wyne,

The fourth Booke.

wyne, in this bath let her remayne the space of a good halfe houre, and a little before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drinke of this electuary folowng.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Baylyngale, Cinamome, and long pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annis seede the wayght of two grottes, of Sage leaues dyled the wayght of thzee grottes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small pouder, temper them altogether in so much pure claryfyed hony, as maye be sufficient to receyue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fine Suger as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grottes, with .viii. .ii. .oz. .x. sponefulles of good whyte oz claret wyne, other els with good Maluesey oz Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornyng one houre before breakfast oz dyner, other els .v. .oz. .vii. houres after dyner, so that it be not done vpon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornyng, then at nyght thzee oz foure houres after supper, let her receyue vnderneath her clothes, the vapour of these thynges folowng into the priuitie. Take of Lauender dyled, of vnset Tyme, Bay berryes, Juie leaues, of eche halfe a little handfull, of whyte frankencense the wayght of foure grottes, of Sage dyled, oz other two little handfulles of Rosemary leaues

leaves one handfull, seeth these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour therof, sitting grouelyng, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or conduite, thozowe the whiche the vapour may be directed in the womans priuie passage, the nere thereby, that the bertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyp wooll, or els fine linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priuie passage, ther to remayne the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuary, and vapour, I counsell them that haue nede to vse them the space of thzee dayes continually, and then the thyrde nyght to companye with her husbnde, and by the grace of God she shalbe sped. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath only, or the electuary alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedye haue ben aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, worketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceadyng of colde, moyste, and fleigmatike humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperancie in heate and dryeth, then let her be purged of coller, or other vnkynnd heat bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then after ward to vse bathes electuaries, and vapours, of moderatly cooling thinges, as of Roses, Violets, Lettuse, Purs-
layne,

The fourth booke.

layne, Plantaine, and dyuers other.

But forasmuch that most commonly the br-
apitude of conception (in women hauing their
health) springeth of the superfluitie of colde &
moyst humours (wherof we haue already spo-
ken) therefore all other impedimentes leste a
part, ye shall holde ye content with this for this
tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all
the occasions, whereby conception may be let
oz impedit, then shoulde I here alledge and
bryng in all the diseases that may happen to a
woman in that partes, with the remedies ther-
of, whiche were a long worke and not proper
for this volume.

* In this. vi. Chapter is entreated of diuers bel-
lifying receptes, as ye may here
after reade.

The embellishing oz bellifying me-
dicines wherof I entende to speake
here, be not to be vnderstanden to
be of that sort whereby any Adstiti-
cious oz outwarde forayne beautie
oz set colours should be acquired oz gotten, the
which far fet & dampnable curiositie, I doubt
not but that all honest and vertuous sadde wo-
men do vtterly abhorre and contempne: but
here mine only meaning is, to shew how to re-
moue certayne blemishes, & as it were weedes
of the body, through the whiche many tymes,
the naturall beautie therof is obscured and de-
faced. For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer so
beauti-

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvii.

beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes entermynglyng them selues among the good hearbes, wyll defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well diligented and pyked, yet alwayes therin will remayne some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche euer when time or season serueth, nature thrusteth forth.

Lyke wyle in the body of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of ill and not necessary humours, with the which nature being offended and cloyed, expelleth and dzyueth them forth, sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, accordyng to the aptitude or feblenelle in resistance of the place receyuyng it, and the force or violencie of nature (therwith greued) sending it, so that the superfluities founde in the vpper part and face or superficie of the skin, ensueth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter contayned and commixed in the baynes among the bloud, and is a great euidence and testimonie therof. But here I wyll not speake of all kindes of vtter diseases springing of this inwarde corrupted humours, but onlye of suche thynges as commonly chaunce to men and woman without any imperishment of theyr health.

As for example, first I wyll briefly declare the fylthynesse of the head, called in laten *Perrigo*,

The fourth booke.

in Englyshe, the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembering and cratching of the head, certayne whyte scales, as it were byan, falleth of from the head, and lyeth verye thicke among and vnder the hayze.

* Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

The cause of this Dandruffe commeth by abundance of fleumatike humours, commixt with the bloud, the which dayly and hourelly by vnseffible sweatyng, euaporateth and issueth forth of the poores, in the skinne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skyn, and there remainyng and gatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helping the forest of hayze which couereth, harbereth and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no hayze groweth. And most commonly they that haue blacke hayze, haue more store of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffred ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the hayzes, makyng them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in kembering. And although this superfluitie be not clendly, yet notwithstanding it shall be no wysedome for me to teache, ne any other here, with encombred, to learne how to stoppe it, for feare of farther inconueniencs, but onlye I counsell you once in then dayes at the least, to
washe

The fourth Booke. Fol. Cxxviii.

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye wherin let be steeped in a lynnē bagge of Annis seede, Cummin, dzyed Rosemary, fenugreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke much: and beware that after the washyng of your heade ye take no colde, befoze the heade be perfectly dzyed.

And wheras some say, that they which vse ofte washyng of theyz heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in such that after they haue ben washed, roll by theyz hayze (beyng yet wet) about theyz heades, the colde wherof is daungerous to bryng them to Catarrhes and pooles, with other inconueniencies. wherfoze all diligence must be had, that the head may be exactly well dzyed with warm clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washyng, and then neuer feare no inconueniencies, but rather conuenience and commoditie: & let this be done also fastyng in the moornyng, or els one houre befoze supper, or. v. houres after supper: this oft washyng shall purysye the skyn of the headde, and stedfast the hayze from fallyng, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the sences therin conteyned, and greatly comfort the Braynes.

To take away hayze from places where
it is vnsemely.

Item, sometymes hayze groweth in places vnsemely, and out of order: as in manye maydens and women the hayze groweth

The fourth Booke.

so lo'we in the foreheades and the temples, that it disfigureth them: for this ye maye vble three wayes to remouue them, eyther to pluck by one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther elles with this lye folowynge. Take newe burnt Lymne foure ounces, of Arsenicke one ounce, stipe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to proue whether it be perfecte, dyp a feather therin, and yf the plume of the feather depart of easely, then is it strong ynough, with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from hayze, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the hayzes, and they wyll folowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein bran bath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Olyfe, beaten and mixt together with the iuyce of Singrene or Purlayne, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remouue hayze, is with a plaster made of very drye pytche, and vpon leather applyed to the place, the hayzes beyng firste shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payze of Cyfars.

Nowe when the hayzes be by by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Allome the wayght of a grote, and dissolue it in two sponefulles of the iuyce of Nyghtshade, or of Henbane, and therewithall annoynte the
place

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxix.

place two or three tymes euery day, the space of
ix. or .x. dayes, and hayze wyll growe no moze in
that place.

To do away Frekens or other spottes
in the face.

These frekens and suche other spottes in
the face or other where in the body, may
be taken away by often annoynting the
with the oyle of Carter, to be founde alwayes
at the Apothecaries, and suerly that oyle is so-
ueraigne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce
in halfe a pynt of strong whyte Vinegre, tyll
halfe be consumed, then myrte therwith Honey
three sponefulles, and the wayght of a penye of
Mercury sublimid, (to be had at the Apotheca-
ries) and seeth these together agayne tyll it be-
come thicke: with this annoynt the frekens,
and it wyl destroy them. This is also very good
for the Morphewe, and other discoloration or
staynyng of the skyn.

To destroy Wartes and such lyke excrescences
on the face or els where.

For this purpose nothyng is so excellent
as euery day once, the space of thre or four
dayes, to droppe one droppe of strong wa-
ter, called *Aqua fortis*, on them, for this destroyeth
them in very short tyme.

Item the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce
of Marygoldes is very good for the same.

Item, dissolue a lyttle Mercury sublimid in
sayze

The fourth Booke.

faire water, & therewith drop the wartes, and they wyll some wyther and consume away.

C To cleare and claryfye the skin in the handes, face or other part of the body.

THIS is nothyng better then to take one sponefull of the oyle of Tarter, and sixe sponefulles of water, with these comixed together, washe the handes, face, and other partes, for it scoureth, clenseth and purifyeth the skyn soueraignely, and wyll suffer no fylthynes to remayne in the poores of the flesh, and this oyle of Tarter is made on this wyse. Take wyne lyes dyed, the whiche the Golde Smythes do call Arguyl, and beate it into powder, and then fyl therof a Goldsmythes crudyble, and set it among hoate coales, tyll the Arguyl begyn to waxe blacke: then take it out of the fyre and lette it coole, and bynde it in a linnen cloute, and hange it a lyttle ouer the vapour of hoate boylunge water: that done, hang this cloute with the Arguyl in a glasse with a broade mouth, so that the bagge or clout touch not the bottome of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Tarter wyll droppe downe a lyttle and lyttle: and the soner, yf it stande in a very colde and moyst sellar.

Item to scoure the handes & the bodye, some vse to washe theyr handes with the powder of Ores, which is the roote of the blewe flowre, deluce, and some with Beane flowre.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good for that purpose, and so is hony.

C To

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxx.

* To souple and mollifie the ruggednes
of the skinne.

Annoynt the skyn with the Oyle of sweete
Almons, the same is verie good also for
chippinges of the lippes or handes.

Item, Deere suet is very proper for the same
purpose, especially being well washed and tem-
pered with Rose water, wherein hath ben dis-
solued two or thre graynes of pure Muske.

¶ Against sodayne rylnges of pimples, thzough vn-
kinde heate, in the face or els where.

Take the white of an egge, and beate it wel
with a sponne, and then therewith commire
two sponnefull of Salet oyle, one sponne
full of Rose water, another of the iuyce of So-
rell, & halfe a little sponnefull of Vineger, here-
with annoynt the pimples and rylnges.

* To kepe and preserue the teeth cleane.

First yf they be very yelowe and fylthy, or
blackyshe, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and
pike them cleane and whyte, then after
to maintayne them cleane, it shalbe very good
to rubbe them euery day with the roote of a
Mallowe, & to pike them cleane that no meate
remayne and putrisie betwene the teeth.

Item, take of the small whyte pybble stones
whiche be founde by the water sides, and beate
thē in very smal powder, hereof take an ounce,
and of Masticke one dram, mingle them toge-
ther

The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in. xiiii. dayes rub exactly your teeth, and this shall kepe your teeth fayre and whyte, but beware ye touche not ne bere the gummes therwithall.

Item, to stable and stedfast the teeth, and to kepe the gummes in good case, it shalbe verye good euery day in the moznyng, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

¶ Of synkyng bzeath.

Synch of the bzeath commeth eyther by occasion bread in the mouth, or els in the stomacke. If it come from the stomacke, then the body must be purged by the farther aduyle of a Phisition. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then most commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted hollowe teeth, which in this case must be plucked out, and the gummes well scoured and washed with Vinegre wherin hath ben sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanly keepyng of the teeth doth conferre much to the sauerinesse of the mouth.

¶ Of the ranke sauour of the arnehole.

This vice in many persons is very tedious and lothsome, the remedie whereof is, to purge fyrst the colericke and egre humours, originall causers of the same, and afterwarde to washe the arneholes oftentymes with the water wherein wormwood hath ben sodden together with Camomell, and a lyttle quantitie of Blome.

Item,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxxi.

Item, Authours do wyte, that the rootes of Artichaultes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in whyte wyne & so dzonke, doth clense the stench of the armeholes and other partes of the body by the brine. For (as Galen also doth testifie) he prouoketh copy and plentie of stynkyng and vnsauery brine from all partes of the body, the whiche propertie it hath by speciall gyfte, and not only by his hoate qualitie. And thus here I make an ende of this fourth and last booke.

FINIS.

1565.



